Basic Grammar in Use

THIRD EDITION

Self-study reference and practice for students of North American English

with answers

Raymond Murphy
with William R. Smalzer
Basic Grammar in use

Self-study reference and practice for students of North American English

Third Edition

Raymond Murphy with William R. Smalzer

Cambridge University Press
## Contents

To the Student viii  
To the Teacher x  

### Present

1. am/is/are  
2. am/is/are (questions)  
3. I am doing (present continuous)  
4. are you doing? (present continuous questions)  
5. I do/work/like, etc. (simple present)  
6. I don't... (simple present negative)  
7. Do you...? (simple present questions)  
8. I am doing (present continuous) and I do (simple present)  
9. I have... and I've got...  

### Past

10. was/were  
11. worked/got/went, etc. (simple past)  
12. I didn't... Did you...? (simple past negative and questions)  
13. I was doing (past continuous)  
14. I was doing (past continuous) and I did (simple past)  
15. I used to...  

### Present perfect

16. Have you ever...?  
17. How long have you...?  
18. for since ago  
19. I have done and I did (present perfect and simple past 1)  
20. just, already, and yet (present perfect and simple past 2)  
21. I've lost my key. I lost my key last week. (present perfect and simple past 3)  

### Passive

22. is done was done (passive 1)  
23. is being done has been done (passive 2)  

### Verb forms

24. be/have/do in present and past tenses  
25. Regular and irregular verbs  

### Future

26. What are you doing tomorrow?  
27. I'm going to...  
28. will 1  
29. will 2  

---

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the STUDY GUIDE on page 263.
### Modals, imperatives, etc.
- **30** might
- **31** can and could
- **32** must
- **33** should
- **34** I have to...
- **35** Would you like...? I'd like...
- **36** I'd rather...
- **37** Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!

### There and it
- **38** there is there are
- **39** there was/were there has/have been there will be
- **40** It...

### Auxiliary verbs
- **41** I am, I don't, etc.
- **42** You have? / Have you? / You are? / Are you?, etc.
- **43** too/either so am I / neither do I, etc.
- **44** isn't, haven't, don't, etc. (negatives)

### Questions
- **45** is it...? have you...? do they...?, etc. (questions 1)
- **46** Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)
- **47** Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)
- **48** What...? Which...? How...? (questions 4)
- **49** How long does it take...?
- **50** Do you know where...? I don't know what..., etc.

### Reported speech
- **51** She said that... He told me that...

### -ing and to...
- **52** work/working go/going do/doing
- **53** to... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
- **54** I want you to... I told you to...
- **55** I went to the store to...

### Go, get, do, make, and have
- **56** go to... go on... go for... go-ing
- **57** get
- **58** do and make
- **59** have

### Pronouns and possessives
- **60** I/me he/him they/them, etc.
- **61** my/his/their, etc.
- **62** Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers, etc.
- **63** I/me/my/mine

---

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the STUDY GUIDE on page 263.
myself/yourself/themselves, etc.

'-s (Kate’s camera / my brother’s car, etc.)

A and the
a/an . . .
train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)
a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)
a/an and the
the . . .
go to work go home go to the movies
I like music I hate exams
the . . . (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns
this/that/these/those
one/ones
some and any
not + any no none
not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no one/nothing
somebody/anything/nowhere, etc.
every and all
all most some any no/none
both either neither
a lot much many
(a) little (a) few

Adjectives and adverbs
old/nice/interesting, etc. (adjectives)
quickly/badly/suddenly, etc. (adverbs)
old/older expensive / more expensive
older than . . . more expensive than . . .
not as . . . as
the oldest the most expensive
equal
too

Word order
He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
always/usually/often, etc. (word order 2)
still yet already
Give me that book! Give it to me!

Conjunctions and clauses
and but or so because
When . . .
If we go . . . If you see . . ., etc.
If I had . . . If we went . . ., etc.
a person who . . . a thing that/which . . . (relative clauses 1)
the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)
**Prepositions**

104 at 8:00 on Monday in April
105 from... to until since for
106 before after during while
107 in at on (places 1)
108 in at on (places 2)
109 to in at (places 3)
110 next to, between, under, etc.
111 up, over, through, etc.
112 on at by with about
113 afraid of..., good at..., etc. of/at/for, etc. (prepositions + -ing)
114 listen to..., look at..., etc. (verb + preposition)

**Phrasal verbs**

115 go in, fall off, run away, etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
116 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendix 1 Active and passive 235
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 236
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 237
Appendix 4 Short forms (he’s / I’d / don’t, etc.) 238
Appendix 5 Spelling 240
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (take off / give up, etc.) 242
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / try on clothes, etc.) 243

Additional Exercises 244

Study Guide 263

Answer Key to Exercises 276
Answer Key to Additional Exercises 303
Answer Key to Study Guide 306

Index 308
To the Student

This is a grammar book for beginning to low-intermediate students of English. There are 116 units in the book, and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (Contents).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (I have been, he has done, etc.), study Units 16–21.

Use the Contents or the Index (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study Guide at the back of the book.
Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

Use the Answer Key to check your answers. The Answer Key is on pages 276-302.

Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don’t forget the seven Appendixes at the back of the book (pages 235-243). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling, and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional Exercises at the back of the book (pages 244-262). There is a list of these exercises on page 244.

CD-ROM
This book is sold with or without a CD-ROM. On the CD-ROM, there are more exercises on all the units, and these are different from the exercises in the book. There are also more than 600 test questions.
To the Teacher

The most important features of this book are:
■ It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
■ It is for beginning to low-intermediate students of English. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at the beginning to low-intermediate level.
■ It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organized progressively.
■ It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organization of the book
There are 116 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organized in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions, and articles. Units are not ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should not be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the Contents, and there is a comprehensive Index at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven Appendixes (pages 235–243) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling, and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students’ attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of Additional Exercises (pages 244–262). These exercises provide “mixed” practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section, and there is a full list on page 244.

Also at the back of the book there is a Study Guide to help students decide which units to study – see page 263.

Finally, there is an Answer Key (pages 276–302) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the Study Guide and Answer Key is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level
The book is for beginning learners, i.e., learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for beginning students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners’ course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the beginning learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.
Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see To the Student) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as a beginning grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

CD-ROM

The book is sold with or without a CD-ROM. The CD-ROM contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of more than 600 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests.

Basic Grammar in Use, Third Edition

This is a new edition of Basic Grammar in Use. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- The book has been redesigned with new color illustrations.
- There is reorganization, so some units have different numbers from the previous edition.
- There are many (usually minor) revisions to the explanations, examples, and exercises.
- There are two new pages of Additional Exercises (pages 244–262).
- There is a new CD-ROM with further exercises to accompany the book.
Basic Grammar in use
UNIT 1

am/is/are

My name is Lisa. I'm 22. I'm not married.

I'm American. I'm from Chicago. My favorite color is blue. My favorite sports are tennis and swimming.

I'm a student. My father is a doctor, and my mother is a journalist. I'm interested in art.

I'm 22. I'm not married. My favorite color is blue. My favorite sports are tennis and swimming.

I'm a student. My father is a doctor, and my mother is a journalist. I'm interested in art.

Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I am not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is</td>
<td>he is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are</td>
<td>we are not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you are not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are</td>
<td>they are not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

short forms

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- Steve is sick. He's in bed.
- My brother is afraid of dogs.
- It's 10:00. You're late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane isn't a teacher. She's a student.
- Those people aren't Canadian. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.

that's = that is there's = there is here's = here is

- Thank you. That's very nice of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- "Here's your key." "Thank you."
1.1 Write the short form (she's / we aren't, etc.)

1. she is ________ 3. it is not ________ 5. I am not ________
2. they are ________ 4. that is ________ 6. you are not ________

1.2 Write am, is, or are.

1. The weather is nice today. 5. Look! There ____ Carol.
2. I _____ not rich. 6. My brother and I _____ good tennis players.
3. This bag _____ heavy. 7. Amy _____ at home. Her children _____ at school.
4. These bags _____ heavy. 8. I _____ a taxi driver. My sister _____ a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.

1. Steve is sick. He's ________ in bed.
2. I'm not hungry, but ________ thirsty.
3. Mr. Thomas is a very old man. ________ 98.
4. These chairs aren't beautiful, but ________ comfortable.
5. The weather is nice today. ________ warm and sunny.
6. “______ late.” “No, I'm not. I'm early!”
7. Catherine isn't at home. ________ at work.
8. “______ your coat.” “Oh, thank you very much.”

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

1. (name?) My ________
2. (from?) I ________
3. (age?) I ________
4. (job?) I ________
5. (favorite color or colors?) My ________
6. (interested in . . . ?) I ________

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty

1. ________ 3. He ________ 5. ________
2. They ________ 4. ________ 6. ________

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use is/isn't or are/aren't.

1. (it / hot today) It isn't hot today OR It's hot today.
2. (it / windy today) It ________
3. (my hands / cold) My ________
4. (Brazil / a very big country) ________
5. (diamonds / cheap) ________
6. (Toronto / in the United States) ________

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use I'm / I'm not.

7. (tired) I'm tired OR I'm not tired.
8. (hungry) ________
9. (a good swimmer) ________
10. (interested in politics) ________
am/is/are (questions)

**Positive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>am</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Question**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>am?</th>
<th>is?</th>
<th>are?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What's your name? David.

Are you married? No, I'm single.

How old are you? 25.

Are you a student? Yes, I am.

- "Am I late?" "No, you're on time."
- "Is your mother at home?" "No, she's out."
- "Are your parents at home?" "No, they're out."
- "Is it cold in your room?" "Yes, a little."
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:

- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not Is at home your mother?)
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not Are new your shoes?)


- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- "Where are you from?" "Canada."
- "What color is your car?" "It's red."
- "How old is Joe?" "He's 24."
- "How are your parents?" "They're fine."
- These postcards are nice. How much are they?
- This hotel isn't very good. Why is it so expensive?

What's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is

- What's your phone number?  
- Who's that man?
- Where's Lucy?
- How's your father?

**Short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I am.</th>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>not. or</th>
<th>he she it</th>
<th>isn't. or</th>
<th>he she it</th>
<th>aren't.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>I am</td>
<td>he's</td>
<td>not.</td>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>isn't.</td>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>aren't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
<td>she's</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I am."
- "Are you hungry?" "No, I'm not, but I'm thirsty."
- "Is your friend Japanese?" "Yes, he is."
- "Are these your keys?" "Yes, they are."
- "That's my seat." "No, it isn't."
2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

1. Where’s the camera? a) Toronto.
2. Is your car blue? b) No, I’m not.
3. Is Linda from London? c) Yes, you are.
5. Where’s Ann from? e) Black.
6. What color is your bag? f) No, it’s black.
7. Are you hungry? g) In your bag.
8. How is George? h) No, she’s American.

2.2 Make questions with these words.
1. (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home?
2. (your parents / are / how) How are your parents?
3. (interesting / is / your job) Is your job interesting?
4. (the stores / are / open today) Are the stores open today?
5. (from / where / you / are) Where are you from?
6. (interested in sports / you / are) Are you interested in sports?
7. (is / near here / the post office) Is the post office near here?
8. (at school / are / your children) Are your children at school?
9. (you / are / late / why) Why are you late?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use What . . . / Who . . . / Where . . . / How . . .

1. How are your children? They’re fine.
2. Where is the bus stop? At the end of the block.
3. How old are your children? Five, six, and ten.
4. How much do these oranges cost? $1.50 a pound.
5. What is your favorite sport? Skiing.
6. Who is the man in this photograph? That’s my father.
7. What color are your new shoes? Black.

2.4 Write the questions.

1. (name?) What’s your name? Paul.
2. (Australian?) Are you Australian? No, I’m Canadian.
3. (how old?) How old are you? I’m 30.
4. (a teacher?) Are you a teacher? Yes, I am.
5. (married?) Are you married? No, I’m not.
6. (wife a lawyer?) Is your wife a lawyer? No, she’s a teacher.
7. (from?) Where are you from? She’s from Mexico.
8. (her name?) What is her name? Ana.
9. (how old?) How old is she? She’s 27.

2.5 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn’t., etc.).

1. Are you married? No, I’m not.
3. Is it cold today? Yes.
5. Is it dark now? No.
6. Are you a teacher? Yes.
The present continuous is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Continuous Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am/are + doing/eating/running/writing</td>
<td>I'm working. I'm not watching TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is/are + ing</td>
<td>Maria is reading a newspaper. She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.) The phone is ringing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td>are/are + -ing</td>
<td>We're having dinner. You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening... ) The children are doing their homework.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
\text{Am/is/are + -ing} = \text{something is happening now:}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)</td>
<td>Look, there's Sarah. She's wearing a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)</td>
<td>The weather is nice. It's not raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Where are the children?&quot; &quot;They're playing in the park.&quot;</td>
<td>(on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can I call you later?</td>
<td>You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

come → coming  write → writing  dance → dancing  run → running  sit → sitting  swim → swimming  lie → lying

am/is/are → Unit 1  are you doing? (questions) → Unit 4  I am doing and I do → Unit 8
What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 26
3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

- eat
- have
- lie
- play
- sit
- wait

1. __She's eating__ an apple.
2. He ___________ for a bus.
3. They ___________ soccer.
4. ___________ on the floor.
5. ___________ breakfast.
6. ___________ on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

- build
- cook
- leave
- stand
- stay
- swim
- take
- work

1. Please be quiet. I ___________.
2. “Where’s John?” “He’s in the kitchen. He ___________. “Oh, I’m sorry.”
3. “Where’s Sue?” “She ___________ a new hotel downtown.”
4. Look! Somebody ___________ on my foot.” “Oh, I’m sorry.”
5. “Where’s Sue?” “She ___________ at a hotel on the beach.”
6. We’re here on vacation. We ___________ on the floor.
7. They ___________ a shower.”
8. I ___________ now. Good-bye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use She’s -ing or She isn’t -ing.

1. (have dinner) ___________.
2. (watch television) ___________.
3. (sit on the floor) ___________.
4. (read a book) ___________.
5. (play the piano) ___________.
6. (laugh) ___________.
7. (wear a hat) ___________.
8. (write a letter) ___________.

3.4 What’s happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) ___________.
2. (It / snow) ___________.
3. (I / sit / on a chair) ___________.
4. (I / eat) ___________.
5. (It / rain) ___________.
6. (I / study / English) ___________.
7. (I / listen / to music) ___________.
8. (the sun / shine) ___________.
9. (I / wear / shoes) ___________.
10. (I / read / a newspaper) ___________.

I’m not washing my hair.
It’s snowing. OR It isn’t snowing.
are you doing? (present continuous questions)

**Positive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Am</th>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
<th>It</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Question**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Am</th>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
<th>It</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Are you feeling OK?” “Yes, I’m fine, thanks.”
“Is it raining?” “Yes, take an umbrella.”
Why are you wearing a coat? It’s not cold.
“What’s Paul doing?” “He’s reading the newspaper.”
“What are the children doing?” “They’re watching television.”
Look, there’s Emily! Where’s she going?
Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

Study the word order:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is</th>
<th>Are</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Are</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>working today?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Is | Are | Paul    | working today? (not Is working Paul today?)
| Where | Are | they | going? |
| Where | Are | those people | going? (not Where are going those people?)

**Short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Am</th>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
<th>It</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I</td>
<td>am.</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, I’m</td>
<td>not.</td>
<td>not.</td>
<td>not.</td>
<td>not.</td>
<td>not.</td>
<td>not.</td>
<td>not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Are you leaving now?” “Yes, I am.”
“Is Paul working today?” “Yes, he is.”
“Is it raining?” “No, it isn’t.”
“Are your friends staying at a hotel?” “No, they aren’t. They’re staying with me.”
4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1. (you / watch / it?)  Are you watching it?
   No, you can turn it off.
2. (you / leave / now?) ______
   Yes, see you tomorrow.
3. (it / rain?) ______
   No, not right now.
4. (you / enjoy / the movie?) ______
   Yes, it’s very funny.
5. (that clock / work?) ______
   No, it’s broken.
6. (you / wait / for a bus?) ______
   No, for a taxi.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at read

1. What ______ are you reading?
2. Where ______ she?
3. What ______?
4. Why ______?
5. What ______?
6. Why ______?

4.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (is / working / Paul / today) Is Paul working today?
2. (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing?
3. (you / are / listening / to me) ______
4. (where / your friends / are / going) ______
5. (are / watching / your parents / television) ______
6. (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ______
7. (why / you / are / looking / at me) ______
8. (is / coming / the bus) ______

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn’t., etc.).

1. Are you watching TV? No, I’m not.
2. Are you wearing a watch? ______
3. Are you eating something? ______
4. Is it raining? ______
5. Are you sitting on the floor? ______
6. Are you feeling all right? ______

Additional exercise 3 (page 245)
I do/work/like, etc. (simple present)

They’re looking at their books. They read a lot.

He’s eating an ice cream cone. He likes ice cream.

They read / he likes / I work, etc. = the simple present:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Read</th>
<th>Like</th>
<th>Work</th>
<th>Live</th>
<th>Watch</th>
<th>Do</th>
<th>Have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>reads</td>
<td>likes</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember:
- I work / he works / she lives / it rains, etc.
- I like big cities.
- Your English is good. You speak very well.
- Tim works very hard. He starts at 7:30 and finishes at 8:00 at night.
- The earth goes around the sun.
- We do a lot of different things in our free time.
- It costs a lot of money to build a hospital.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

Always/never/often/usually/sometimes + simple present
- Sue always gets to work early. (not Sue gets always)
- I never eat breakfast. (not I eat never)
- We often sleep late on weekends.
- Mark usually plays tennis on Sundays.
- I sometimes walk to work, but not very often.
Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.

1. (read) she ________ 3. (fly) it ________ 5. (have) she ________
2. (think) he ________ 4. (dance) he ________

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:
eat  go  live  play  play  sleep

1. He plays ________ the piano.
2. They ________ in a very big house.
3. We love movies. She ________ a lot of fruit.
4. Tennis is my favorite sport. He ________ tennis.
5. Seven hours a night. She ________ seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:
boil  close  cost  cost  like  like  meet  open  speak  teach  wash

1. Maria ________ four languages.
2. Banks usually ________ at 9:00 in the morning.
3. The art museum ________ at 5:00 in the afternoon.
4. Tina is a teacher. She ________ math to young children.
5. My job is very interesting. I ________ a lot of people.
6. Peter's car is always dirty. He never ________ it.
7. Food is expensive. It ________ a lot of money.
8. Shoes are expensive. They ________ a lot of money.
9. Water ________ at 100 degrees Celsius.
10. Julia and I are good friends. I ________ her, and she ________ me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives, etc.).

1. (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
2. (to the movies / never / I / go) I never go to the movies.
3. (work / Martina / hard / always) Martina always works hard.
4. (like / chocolate / children / usually) Children usually like chocolate.
5. (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) Julia always enjoys parties.
6. (often / people's names / I / forget) I often forget people's names.
7. (television / Tim / watch / never) Tim never watches television.
8. (usually / dinner / we / have / at 6:30) We usually have dinner at 6:30.
9. (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) Jenny always wears nice clothes.

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.

1. (watch TV in the evening) I usually watch TV in the evening.
2. (read in bed) I ________
3. (get up before 7:00) I ________
4. (go to work/school by bus) I ________
5. (drink coffee in the morning) I ________
I don’t . . . (simple present negative)

The simple present negative is don’t/doesn’t + verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>I don’t work (do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we like</td>
<td>we don’t like (do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>you don’t do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>they don’t have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he works</td>
<td>he doesn’t work (does not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she likes</td>
<td>she doesn’t like (does not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it does</td>
<td>it doesn’t have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I drink coffee, but I don’t drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn’t drink coffee.
- You don’t work very hard.
- We don’t watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn’t rain very often.
- Gary and Nicole don’t know many people.

Remember:

I/we/you/they don’t . . .
he/she/it doesn’t . . .

- I don’t like football.
- He doesn’t like football.
- I don’t like Fred, and Fred doesn’t like me. (not Fred don’t like)
- My car doesn’t use much gas. (not My car don’t use)
- Sometimes he is late, but it doesn’t happen very often.

We use don’t/doesn’t + base form (don’t like / doesn’t speak / doesn’t do, etc.):

- I don’t like to wash the car. I don’t do it very often.
- Sarah speaks Spanish, but she doesn’t speak Italian. (not doesn’t speaks)
- Bill doesn’t do his job very well. (not Bill doesn’t his job)
- Paula doesn’t usually have breakfast. (not doesn’t . . . has)
6.1 Write the negative.
1. I play the piano very well.  
Jane ________ play the piano very well.
2. Jane plays the piano very well.
3. They know my phone number.
4. We work very hard.
5. Mike has a car.
6. You do the same thing every day.

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.

1. Bill and Rose like classical music.
   Carol ________ classical music.
   I ________ classical music.
   Bill and Rose ________ classical music.
   Carol ________ classical music.
   I ________ classical music.

6.3 Write about yourself. Use: I never ... or I ... a lot or I don't ... very often.

1. (watch TV)  
   I never watch TV. OR I watch TV a lot. OR  
   I don't watch TV very often.
2. (go to the theater)  
   I never go to the theater. OR I go to the theater a lot. OR  
   I don't go to the theater very often.
3. (ride a bicycle)  
   I never ride a bicycle. OR I ride a bicycle a lot. OR  
   I don't ride a bicycle very often.
4. (eat in restaurants)  
   I never eat in restaurants. OR I eat in restaurants a lot. OR  
   I don't eat in restaurants very often.
5. (travel by train)  
   I never travel by train. OR I travel by train a lot. OR  
   I don't travel by train very often.

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn’t + these verbs:

   - cost
   - go
   - know
   - read
   - see
   - use
   - wear

1. I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I ________ read it.
2. Paul has a car, but he ________ it very often.
3. Paul and his friends like movies, but they ________ to the movie theater very often.
4. Amanda is married, but she ________ a ring.
5. I ________ much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6. The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It ________ much to stay there.
7. Brian lives near us, but we ________ him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1. Margaret ________ four languages – English, Japanese, Arabic, and Spanish. (speak)
2. I ________ my job. It's very boring. (like)
3. "Where's Martin?" "I'm sorry. I ________." (know)
4. Sue is a very quiet person. She ________ very much. (talk)
5. Andy ________ a lot of coffee. It's his favorite drink. (drink)
6. It's not true! I ________ it! (believe)
7. That's a very beautiful picture. I ________ it a lot. (like)
8. Mark is a vegetarian. He ________ meat. (eat)
We use *do*/*does* in simple present questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>Do I work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we like</td>
<td>do we like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>do you do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>do they have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he works</td>
<td>does he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she likes</td>
<td>does she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it does</td>
<td>does it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study the word order:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do/does + subject + infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you work? on Sundays?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do your friends live near here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does Chris play tennis?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do your parents live?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you wash your hair?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What does this word mean?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much does it cost to fly to Puerto Rico?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions with *always/usually/ever*:

- What do you do? = What’s your job?
  - “What do you do?” “I work in a bank.”

Remember:

- do I/we/you/they…
- does he/she/it…
- Do they like music?
- Does he like music?

Short answers:

- Yes, I/we/you/they do.
- No, I/we/you/they don’t.
- “Do you play tennis?” “No, I don’t.”
- “Do your parents speak English?” “Yes, they do.”
- “Does Gary work hard?” “Yes, he does.”
- “Does your sister live in Vancouver?” “No, she doesn’t.”
7.1 Write questions with Do . . . ? and Does . . . ?

1. I like chocolate. How about you? Do you like chocolate ____________________?
2. I play tennis. How about you? __________________________
4. Tom plays tennis. How about his friends? __________________________
5. You speak English. How about your brother? __________________________
6. I do yoga every morning. How about you? __________________________
7. Sue often travels on business. How about Paul? __________________________
8. I want to be famous. How about you? __________________________

7.2 Make questions from these words + do/does. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents) Where do your parents live __________________________
2. (you / early / always / get up) Do you always get up early __________________________
3. (how often / TV / you / watch) __________________________
4. (you / want / what / for dinner) __________________________
5. (like / you / football) __________________________
6. (your brother / like / football) __________________________
7. (what / you / do / in your free time) __________________________
8. (your sister / work / where) __________________________
9. (to the movies / ever / you / go) __________________________
10. (what / mean / this word) __________________________
11. (often / snow / it / here) __________________________
12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you) __________________________
13. (how much / to call Mexico / it / cost) __________________________
14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) __________________________

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

I work in a bookstore.
It's OK.
At 9:00.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He's a teacher.
Science.
Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don't., etc.).

1. Do you watch TV a lot? __________________________ OR __________________________
2. Do you live in a big city? __________________________
3. Do you ever ride a bicycle? __________________________
4. Does it rain a lot where you live? __________________________
5. Do you play the piano? __________________________

Additional exercises 4-7 (pages 245-246)
I am doing (present continuous) and I do (simple present)

Jack is watching television. He is not playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar. He plays it a lot, and he plays very well.

Jack plays the guitar, but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn’t. (present continuous)
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (simple present)

Present continuous (I am doing) = now, at the time of speaking:

I'm doing

past  now  future
Please be quiet. I’m working. (not I work)
Tom is taking a shower at the moment. (not Tom takes)
Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.
You can turn off the television. I’m not watching it.
Why are you under the table? What are you doing?

Simple present (I do) = in general, all the time, or sometimes:

I do

past  now  future
I work every day from 9:00 to 5:30.
Tom takes a shower every morning.
It rains a lot in the winter.
I don’t watch television very often.
What do you usually do on weekends?

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

like  love  want  know  understand  remember  depend
prefer  hate  need  mean  believe  forget

Use only the simple present with these verbs (I want / do you like?, etc.):

I’m tired. I want to go home. (not I’m wanting)
“Do you know that girl?” “Yes, but I don’t remember her name.”
I don’t understand. What do you mean?
8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1. I'm a photographer.
   Does he take photographs? Yes, he does.
   Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.
   What is he doing? He's taking a bath.

2. I'm a bus driver.
   Is she driving a bus? ______________
   Does she drive a bus? ______________
   What is she doing? ______________

3. I'm a window washer.
   Does he wash windows? ______________
   Is he washing a window? ______________
   What is he doing? ______________

4. We are teachers.
   Are they teaching? ______________
   Do they teach? ______________
   What do they do? ______________

8.2 Complete the sentences with am/is/are or do/don't/does/doesn't.

1. Excuse me, __ do __ you speak English?
2. “Where’s Kate?” “I ______________ know.”
3. What’s so funny? Why ____________ you laughing?
4. “What ____________ your sister do?” “She’s a dentist.”
5. It ____________ raining. I ____________ want to go out in the rain.
6. “Where ____________ you come from?” “Canada.”
7. How much ____________ it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8. Steve is a good tennis player, but he ____________ play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the simple present (I do).

1. Excuse me, __ do __ you speak (you / speak) English?
2. “Where’s Tom?” ______________ (he / take) a shower.”
3. ______________ (I / not / watch) television very often.
4. Listen! Somebody ______________ (sing).
5. Sandra is tired. ______________ (she / want) to go home now.
6. How often ______________ (you / read) a newspaper?
7. “Excuse me, but ______________ (you / sit) in my seat.” “Oh, I’m sorry.”
8. I’m sorry, ______________ (I / not / understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9. It’s late. ______________ (I / go) home now. ______________ (you / come) with me?
10. What time ______________ (your father / finish) work every day?
11. You can turn off the radio. ______________ (I / not / listen) to it.
12. “Where’s Paul?” “In the kitchen. ______________ (he / cook) something.”
13. Martin ______________ (usually / walk).
14. Sue ______________ (not / like) coffee. ______________ (she / prefer) tea.
I have . . . and I’ve got . . .

You can say I have or I’ve got, he has or he’s got:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Short Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>I/we/you/they have got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>he/she/it has got</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I have blue eyes. or I’ve got blue eyes.
- Tim has two sisters. or Tim has got two sisters.
- Our car has four doors. or Our car has got four doors.
- Sarah isn’t feeling well. She has a headache. or She’s got a headache.
- They like animals. They have a horse, three dogs, and six cats. or They’ve got a horse . . .

I don’t have / I haven’t got, etc. (negative)

You can say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Short Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>don’t have</td>
<td>I/we/you/they haven’t got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>doesn’t have</td>
<td>he/she/it hasn’t got</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I have a bike, but I don’t have a car. or I’ve got a bike, but I haven’t got a car.
- Mr. and Mrs. Harris don’t have any children. or . . . haven’t got any children.
- It’s a nice house, but it doesn’t have a garage. or . . . it hasn’t got a garage.
- Mariko doesn’t have a job. or Mariko hasn’t got a job.

Do you have . . . ? / Have you got . . . ?, etc. (questions)

You can say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Short Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>I/we/you/they have?</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>I/we/you/they got?</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Do you have a camera? or Have you got a camera?
- Does Helen have a car? or Has Helen got a car?
- What kind of car does she have? or What kind of car has she got?
- What do you have in your bag? or What have you got in your bag?

Short answers

- “Do you have a camera?” “Yes, I do.” / “No, I don’t.” or
- “Have you got a camera?” “Yes, I have.” / “No, I haven’t.”
- “Does Anne have a car?” “Yes, she does.” / “No, she doesn’t.” or
- “Has Anne got a car?” “Yes, she has.” / “No, she hasn’t.”

had / didn’t have (past) — Units 11-12 have breakfast / have a headache, etc. — Unit 59 some/any — Unit 77
Exercises

9.1 Write the short form with **got** (we've got / he hasn't got, etc.).

1. we have got **we've got**
2. he has got
3. they have got
4. she has not got
5. it has got
6. I have not got

9.2 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

1. Have you got a car?  
   No.  
   1. **He hasn't got a car.**
2. Have you got a computer?  
   No.  
   2. He ____________________
3. Have you got a dog?  
   Yes.  
   3. ____________________
4. Have you got a cell phone?  
   No.  
   4. ____________________
5. Have you got a watch?  
   Yes.  
   5. ____________________
6. Have you got any brothers or sisters?  
   Yes, two brothers and a sister.
   6. ____________________

What about you? Write sentences with *I've got* or *I haven't got*.

7. (a computer) ___________________________________________
8. (a dog) ___________________________________________
9. (a bike) ___________________________________________
10. (brothers / sisters) _______________________________________

9.3 Write these sentences with **have/has** or **don't have** / **doesn't have**. The meaning is the same.

1. They have got two children. **They have two children.**
2. She hasn't got a key. **She doesn't have a key.**
3. He has got a new job. **He has a new job.**
4. They haven't got much money. **They don't have much money.**
5. Have you got an umbrella? **Have you have an umbrella?**
6. We have got a lot of work to do. **We don't have much work to do.**
7. I haven't got your phone number. **I don't have your phone number.**
8. Has your father got a car? **Has your father have a car?**
9. How much money have we got? **How much money don't we have?**

9.4 Complete the sentences with *do, doesn't, don't, got, has,* or *have.*

1. Sarah hasn't **got** a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2. They like animals. They **have** three dogs and two cats.
3. Charles isn't happy. He **has** got a lot of problems.
4. They don't read much. They **don't have** have many books.
5. “What's wrong?” “I've **got** something in my eye.”
6. “Where's my pen?” “I don't **know. I don't have it.**”
7. Julia wants to go to the concert, but she **have** a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use **have/has** or **don't have** / **doesn't have** with:

- a lot of friends
- four wheels
- a headache
- six legs
- a big yard
- much time
- a key

1. I'm not feeling well. I **have a headache.**
2. It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have a big yard.**
3. Most cars
4. Everybody likes Tom. He
5. I can't open the door. I
6. An insect
7. Hurry! We

--- Additional exercises 5-7 (page 246)
was/were

am/is (present) → was (past):
- I am tired. (now)
- Where is Kate? (now)
- The weather is nice today.

are (present) → were (past):
- You are late. (now)
- They aren’t here. (now)

I was tired last night.
Where was Kate yesterday?
The weather was nice last week.

You were late yesterday.
They weren’t here last Sunday.

Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>was not (wasn’t)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it</th>
<th>was not (wasn’t)</th>
<th>were</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>was (wasn’t)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>was (wasn’t)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
We were hungry after the trip, but we weren’t tired.
The hotel was comfortable, but it wasn’t expensive.

Was the weather nice when you were on vacation?
Your shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
Why were you late this morning?

Short answers

Yes, I/he/she/it was. We/you/they were.

No, I/he/she/it wasn’t. We/you/they weren’t.

“Were you late?” “No, I wasn’t.”
“Was Ted at work yesterday?” “Yes, he was.”
“Were Sue and Steve at the party?” “No, they weren’t.”
Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3:00 yesterday afternoon?

1. Gary was in bed.
2. Jack and Kate were reading a book.
3. Sue was writing a letter.
4. Mr. and Mrs. Hall were listening to music.
5. Ben was playing soccer.
6. And you? I was studying.

10.2 Write am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).
1. Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it was very cold.
3. I am hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I feel fine this morning, but I was very tired last night.
5. Where were you at 11:00 last Friday morning?
6. Don’t buy those shoes. They were very expensive.
7. I like your new jacket. Was it expensive?
8. This time last year I was in Paris.
9. “Where were the children?” “I don’t know. They weren’t here a few minutes ago.”

10.3 Write was/were or wasn’t/weren’t.
1. We weren’t happy with the hotel. Our room was very small, and it wasn’t clean.
2. Mark wasn’t at work last week because he was sick. He’s better now.
3. Yesterday they were on vacation, so the banks were closed. They’re open today.
4. “Kate and Bill were at the party?” “Kate was there, but Bill wasn’t.”
5. “Where are my keys?” “I don’t know. They aren’t there now.”
6. You weren’t at home last night. Where were you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + was/were. Put the words in the right order.

1. Why were you late this morning?
2. Why were you late this morning?
3. (late / you / this morning / why?)
4. (difficult / your exam?)
5. (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)
6. (your new camera / how much?)
7. (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
8. (nice / the weather / last week?)

The traffic was bad.
No, it was easy.
They were on vacation.
One hundred and twenty dollars.
Because you were late.
Yes, it was beautiful.
They watch television every night. (simple present)

They watched television last night. (simple past)

**watched** is the **simple past**: I/we/you/they + watched

The simple past is often **-ed** (regular verbs). For example:

- work —► worked
- dance —► danced
- clean —► cleaned
- stay —► stayed
- start —► started
- need —► needed

- I brush my teeth every morning. This morning I brushed my teeth.
- Terry worked in a bank from 1996 to 2003.
- Yesterday it rained all morning. It stopped at lunchtime.
- We enjoyed the party last night. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people. The party ended at midnight.

For spelling, see Appendix 5.

- try —► tried
- study —► studied
- copy —► copied
- stop —► stopped
- plan —► planned

Some verbs are **irregular** (= not regular). The simple past is **not** **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendixes 2–3):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>simple past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I usually get up early, but this morning I got up at 9:30.
- We did a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline went to the movies three times last week.
- James came into the room, took off his coat, and sat down.
11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

- brush  - die  - end  - enjoy  - happen  - open  - rain  - start  - stay  - want

1. I _brushed_ my teeth three times yesterday.
2. It was hot in the room, so I __________ the window.
3. The movie was very long. It ___________ at 7:15 and ___________ at 10:00.
4. When I was a child, I ___________ to be a doctor.
5. The accident __________ last Sunday afternoon.
6. It's a nice day today, but yesterday it ___________ all day.
7. We ___________ our vacation last year. We ___________ at a very nice place.
8. Anna's grandfather ___________ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the simple past of these verbs.

1. get  _got_  4. pay _paid_  7. go _went_
2. see _saw_  5. visit _visited_  8. think _thought_
3. play _played_  6. buy _bought_  9. copy _copied_

11.3 Read about Lisa's trip to Mexico City. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Last Tuesday, Lisa (1) _flew_ from Los Angeles to Mexico City. She (2) ___________ up at 6:00 in the morning and (3) ___________ a cup of coffee. At 7:15 she (4) ___________ home and (5) ___________ to the airport. When she (6) ___________ there, she (7) ___________ the car, (8) ___________ to the terminal, and (9) ___________ in. Then she (10) ___________ breakfast at an airport café and (11) ___________ for her flight. The plane (12) ___________ in Mexico City four hours later. Finally she (13) ___________ the airport to her hotel downtown.

11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week, etc.).

1. James always goes to work by car. Yesterday _he went to work by car._
2. Rachel often loses her keys. She_____________________________ last week.
3. Kate meets her friends every night. She_____________________________ last night.
4. I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I ____________________
5. We often go to the movies on weekends. Last Sunday we__________________
6. I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I__________________
7. Tom always takes a shower in the morning. This morning he__________________
8. Our friends often come to see us. They__________________ last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1. _I went to the theater._
2. ____________________  4. ____________________
3. ____________________  5. ____________________
4. ____________________  6. ____________________
I didn’t . . . Did you . . .?
(simple past negative and questions)

We use **did** in simple past negatives and questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base Form</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>I played</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>I play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>we started</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>we start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>you watched</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>you watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>they had</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>they have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>he saw</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>he see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>she did</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>she do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>it went</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>it go?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do/does (present) → **did** (past):
- I don’t watch television very often.
  I didn’t watch television **yesterday**.
- Does she go out often?
  Did she go out **last night**?

We use **did/didn’t** + base form (watch/play/go, etc.):

- I watched tennis yesterday, but I didn’t win.
- “Did you do your homework?” “No, I didn’t have time.”
- We went to the movies, but we didn’t enjoy the film.

Study the word order in questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did + subject + base form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did your sister call you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What you did do happen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How the accident go for vacation?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where your parents did happen?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

- Yes, I/we/you/they did.
- No, I/we/you/they didn’t.

- “Did you see Joe yesterday?” “No, I didn’t.”
- “Did it rain on Sunday?” “Yes, it did.”
- “Did Helen come to the party?” “No, she didn’t.”
- “Did your parents have a good trip?” “Yes, they did.”
Exercises

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.
1. I saw Barbara, but I didn’t see Jane.
2. They worked on Monday, but they didn’t work on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office, but we didn’t go to the bank.
4. She had a pen, but she didn’t have any paper.
5. Jack did some work in the yard, but he didn’t do any work in the house.

12.2 Write questions with Did . . . ?
1. I watched TV last night. How about you? Did you watch TV last night?
2. I enjoyed the party. How about you? Did you enjoy the party?
3. I had a nice vacation. How about you? Did you have a nice vacation?
4. I finished work early. How about you? Did you finish work early?
5. I slept well last night. How about you? Did you sleep well last night?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.
1. (watch TV) I watched TV OR I didn’t watch TV.
2. (get up before 7:00) I got up before 7:00 OR I didn’t get up before 7:00.
3. (take a shower) I took a shower OR I didn’t take a shower.
4. (buy a magazine) I bought a magazine OR I didn’t buy a magazine.
5. (eat meat) I ate meat OR I didn’t eat meat.
6. (go to bed before 10:30) I went to bed before 10:30 OR I didn’t go to bed before 10:30.

12.4 Write B’s questions. Use: cost get to work go go to bed late happen have a nice time -stay- win

1. A: We went to Chicago last month.
   B: Where did you stay?
   A: With some friends.

2. A: I was late for the meeting.
   B: What time was it?
   A: Half past nine.

3. A: I played tennis this afternoon.
   B: How was it?
   A: No, I lost.

4. A: I had a nice vacation.
   B: Good. Where did you stay?
   A: To the mountains.

5. A: We came home by taxi.
   B: How much was it?
   A: Twenty dollars.

6. A: I’m tired this morning.
   B: How late did you go to bed?
   A: No, but I didn’t sleep very well.

7. A: We went to the beach yesterday.
   B: How was it?
   A: Yes, it was great.

8. A: The window is broken.
   B: Did you stay late at the party?
   A: No, I don’t know.

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative, or question.
1. We went to the movies, but the film wasn’t very good. We didn’t enjoy it. (enjoy)
2. Tim bought some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket, and a sweater. (buy)
3. “Where did you stay yesterday?” “No, it was a nice day.” (stay)
4. We were tired, so we stayed long at the party. (stay)
5. It was very warm in the room, so I opened a window. (open)
6. “Did you call Chris this morning?” “No, I didn’t have time.” (call)
7. “I cut my hand this morning.” “How did that happen?” (do)
8. “Why weren’t you at the meeting yesterday?” “I didn’t know about it.” (know)
I was doing (past continuous)

4:00 — Paul is at home. He is watching television. At 4:00 he wasn’t at home. He was at the gym. He was swimming in the pool. He wasn’t watching television.

3:30 — He started swimming.

4:00 — He was swimming.

4:15 — He finished swimming.

It is 6:00 now. Paul is at home. He is watching television.

Was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was doing</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he</strong></td>
<td><strong>he</strong></td>
<td>watching?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was watching</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>playing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>she</strong></td>
<td><strong>she</strong></td>
<td>swimming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was playing</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>swimming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>it</strong></td>
<td><strong>it</strong></td>
<td>living?,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was swimming</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>we</strong></td>
<td><strong>we</strong></td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were doing</td>
<td>were not (weren’t)</td>
<td>doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>watching?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were watching</td>
<td>were not (weren’t)</td>
<td>playing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>swimming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were swimming</td>
<td>were not (weren’t)</td>
<td>living?,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ What were you doing at 11:30 yesterday? Were you working?
■ “What did he say?” “I don’t know. I wasn’t listening.”
■ It was raining, so we didn’t go out.
■ In 2001 we were living in Japan.
■ Today she’s wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing pants.
■ I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining, and the birds were singing.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying, etc.) → Appendix 5

Am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m working (now).</td>
<td>I was working at 10:30 last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It isn’t raining (now).</td>
<td>It wasn’t raining when we went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you doing (now)?</td>
<td>What were you doing at 3:00?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3:00 yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1. Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.
2. Jack and Kate . They
3. Tim
4.
5. And you? I

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. At 8:45 she was washing her car.
2. At 10:45 she
3. At 8:00
4. At 12:10
5. At 7:15
6. At 9:30

13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1. Where were you living in 1999?
2. at 2:00?
3. when you got up?
4. so fast?
5. a suit yesterday?

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

1. He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 
8.
I was doing (past continuous) and I did (simple past)

Jack was reading a book. The phone rang. He stopped reading. He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (simple past)
What was Jack doing when the phone rang? He was reading a book.
What did he do when the phone rang? He stopped reading and answered the phone.

Jack began reading before the phone rang. So when the phone rang, he was reading.

Simple past
A: What did you do yesterday morning?
B: We played tennis. (from 10:00 to 11:30)

Start Finish
10:00 11:30

Past continuous
A: What were you doing at 10:30?
B: We were playing tennis.

Start
10:00

I started work at 9:00 and finished at 4:30. At 2:30 I was working.
It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
Kelly fell asleep while she was reading.
Exercises

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or simple past.

1. Lucy __broke__ (break) her arm last week. It __happened__ (happen) when she __painted__ (paint) her room. She __fell__ (fall) off the ladder.

2. The train __arrived__ (arrive) at the station, and Paula __got__ (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, __waited__ (wait) to meet her.

3. Yesterday Sue __walked__ (walk) down the street when she __met__ (meet) James. He __went__ (go) to the station to catch a train, and he __carried__ (carry) a bag. They __stopped__ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or simple past.

1. A: What __were you doing__ (you / do) when the phone __rang__ (ring)?
   B: I __was watching__ (watch) television.

2. A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
   B: Yes, she __studied__ (study).

3. A: What time __did the mail arrive__ (the mail / arrive) this morning?
   B: It __came__ (come) while I __had__ (have) breakfast.

4. A: Was Tracey at work today?
   B: No, she __was not__ (not / go) to work. She was sick.

5. A: How fast __did you drive__ (you / drive) when the police __stopped__ (stop) you?
   B: I'm not sure, but I __wasn't driving__ (not / drive) very fast.

6. A: __Did your team win__ (your team / win) the baseball game yesterday?
   B: No, the weather was very bad, so we __didn't play__ (not / play).

7. A: How __did you break__ (you / break) the window?
   B: We __played__ (play) baseball. I __hit__ (hit) the ball and it __broke__ (break) the window.

8. A: __Did you see__ (you / see) Jenny last night?
   B: Yes, she __wore__ (wear) a very nice jacket.

9. A: __Did you do__ (you / do) at 2:00 this morning?
   B: I was asleep.

10. A: __Did you lose__ (you / lose) my key last night.
    B: How __did you get__ (you / get) into your apartment?
    A: I __climbed__ (climb) in through a window.
Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory. = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn’t work there now:

He used to work | He works
---|---
past | now

You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ..., etc.

I / you / we / they used to be

| He / she / it used to be
|---|---|
| work | have
| play, etc. |

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books, but I don’t read much these days.
- Liz has short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- They used to live on the same street as us, so we used to see them a lot. But we don’t see them very often these days.
- Helen used to have a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn’t use to ...

- When I was a child, I didn’t use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to ...?

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

We use used to ... only for the past. You cannot say “I use to ...” for the present:

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf)
- We usually get up early. (not We use to get up early)
Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to.

1. **She used to have** long hair.
2. He **used to** play baseball.
3. **He used to** be a taxi driver.
4. **We used to** live in the country.
5. **I used to** wear glasses.
6. **This building used to** be a hotel.

15.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Do you play any sports? Yes, I swim every day, and I play volleyball.
Do you go out much? Yes, three or four nights a week.
Do you play a musical instrument? Yes, the guitar.
Do you like to read? Yes, I read a lot.
Do you travel much? Yes, I take two or three trips a year.

Write sentences about Karen with used to.

1. **She used to swim every day.**
2. She **used to** play volleyball.
3. **She used to** wear glasses.
4. **We used to** live near the airport.
5. **When I was a child,** I never **ate** meat, but I eat it now.
6. **Normally I start work at 7:00,** so I **used to** get up very early.

15.3 Complete these sentences. Use used to or the simple present (I play / he lives, etc.).

1. I **used to play** tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2. “Do you play any sports?” “Yes, I **play** basketball.”
3. “Do you have a car?” “No, I **had** one, but I sold it.”
4. George **was** a waiter. Now he’s the manager of a hotel.
5. “Do you go to work by car?” “Sometimes, but most days I **take** by train.”
6. When I was a child, I never **ate** meat, but I eat it now.
7. Mary loves to watch TV. She **watches** TV every night.
8. We **lived** near the airport, but we moved downtown a few years ago.
10. “What games **did** you **used to** play when you were a child?”
**Have you ever...?**

Have you been to Mexico City?
Yes, I have. Many times.

Have you ever been to Japan?
No, I’ve never been to Japan.

---

**Have been / have driven / have played,** etc. is the present perfect *(have + past participle)*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular verbs</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) played</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) lived</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) visited</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) read</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I we you they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have (‘ve)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have not (haven’t)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irregular verbs</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) played?</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) lived?</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) visited?</th>
<th>I have (‘ve) read?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>has (‘s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has not (hasn’t)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Regular verbs**
The past participle is *-ed* (the same as the simple past):

- play —► I have played
- live —► I have lived
- visit —► she has visited

**Irregular verbs**
The past participle is not *-ed*.
Sometimes the past participle is the same as the simple past:

- buy —► I bought / I have bought
- have —► he had / he has had

Sometimes the past participle is different (see Appendixes 2–3).

- break —► I broke / I have broken
- see —► you saw / you have seen

---

We use the present perfect when we talk about a time from the past until now, for example, a person’s life.

**Have you ever been to Japan?**  
*Have you ever...?*  
**time from the past until now**

- “Have you been to France?” “No, I haven’t.”
- We’ve been to Canada, but we haven’t been to Alaska.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I’ve seen that woman before, but I can’t remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- “Have you read this book?” “Yes, I’ve read it twice.” *(twice = two times)*

---

**Present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:**

- “Has Ann ever been to Australia?” “Yes, once.” *(once = one time)*
- “Have you ever played golf?” “Yes, I play a lot.”
- My sister has never traveled by plane.
- I’ve never ridden a horse.
- “Who is that man?” “I don’t know. I’ve never seen him before.”
16.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning with Have you ever . . .? Write the questions.

1. (Montreal?)
2. (play / golf?)
3. (South Korea?)
4. (lose / your passport?)
5. (fly / in a helicopter?)
6. (win / a race?)
7. (Peru?)
8. (drive / a bus?)
9. (break / your leg?)

Have you ever been to Montreal?
Have you ever played golf?

16.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 16.1.)

1. (Peru) She's been to Peru twice.
2. (South Korea) She
3. (win / a race)
4. (fly / in a helicopter)

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5. (New York) I
6. (play / tennis)
7. (drive / a truck)
8. (be / late for work or school)

16.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

1. She has had many different jobs.
2. She
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

16.4 Put the verbs in the present perfect.

1. I've seen (I / see) that woman before, but I can’t remember her name.
2. “Have you ever played (you / ever / play) golf?” “Yes, I play golf a lot.”
3. “(you / ever / write) a poem?” “Yes, in high school.”
4. “Does Emma know Sam?” “No, (she / never / meet) him.”
5. Ann and Eli have lots of books, and (they / read) all of them.
6. (my brother / be) there twice.
7. Joy’s favorite movie is Howard and Belinda. (she / see) it five times, but (I / never / see) it.
8. (I / travel) by plane, bus, and train. Someday, I want to take a trip by boat.
Jane is on vacation in Brazil. She is there now. She arrived in Brazil on Monday. Today is Thursday. How long has she been in Brazil? She has been in Brazil since Monday for three days.

Compare is and has been:
- She is in Brazil now. is = present
- She has been in Brazil since Monday. for three days. has been = present perfect

Compare:

**Simple present**
- Dan and Kate are married.
- Are you married?
- Do you know Lisa?
- I know Lisa.
- Vera lives in Brasília.
- I have a car.

**Present perfect (have been / have lived / have known, etc.)**
- They have been married for five years.
- How long have you been married?
- How long have you known her?
- How long has she lived in Brasília?
- How long have you had your car?

**Present continuous**
- I'm studying German.
- David is watching TV.
- It's raining.

**Present perfect continuous (have been + -ing)**
- How long have you been studying German?
- How long has he been watching TV?
- It's been raining all day.
17.1 Complete these sentences.
1. Jane is in Brazil. She ______ has been ______ there since Monday.
2. I know Lisa. I ______ have known ______ her for a long time.
3. Sarah and Andy are married. They ______ married ______ since 1999.
4. Brian is sick. He ______ sick ______ for the last few days.
5. We live on Main Street. We ______ there ______ for a long time.
6. Catherine works in a bank. She ______ in a bank ______ for five years.
7. Alan has a headache. He ______ since he got up ______ this morning.
8. I'm studying English. I ______ English ______ for six months.

17.2 Make questions with How long . . . ?
1. Jane is on vacation. How long has she been on vacation?
2. Scott and Judy are in Brazil. How long have they been there?
3. I know Amy. How long have you known her?
4. Diana is studying Italian. How long have you been studying it?
5. My brother lives in Seattle. How long has he lived there?
6. I'm a teacher. How long have you been a teacher?
7. It is raining. How long has it been raining?

17.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:
for 10 minutes all day all her life
- for 10 years since he was 20 since Sunday
1. They have been married for 10 years.
2. She ______
3. They ______
4. The sun ______
5. She ______
6. He ______

17.4 Which is right?
1. Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
2. Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
3. Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
4. A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting / have you been waiting?
   B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5. Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6. Ruth is reading the newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7. “How long do you live / have you lived in this house?” “About 10 years.”
8. “Is that a new coat?” “No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.”
9. Tom is / has been in Seattle right now. He is / He has been there for the last three days.
For and since
We use for and since to say how long:

- Jane is in Brazil. She has been there since Monday.

We use for + a period of time (three days / two years, etc.):

- Richard has been in Canada for six months. (not since six months)
- We've been waiting for two hours. (not since two hours)
- I've lived in Chicago for a long time.

We use since + the start of the period (Monday / 9:00, etc.):

- Richard has been in Canada since January. (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting since 9:00. (= from 9:00 to now)
- I've lived in Chicago since I was 10 years old.

Ago
ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (= three weeks before now)
- “When did Tom leave?” “Ten minutes ago.” (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner an hour ago.
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past (started/did/had/was, etc.).

Compare ago and for:

- When did Jane arrive in Brazil?
  She arrived in Brazil three days ago.
- How long has she been in Brazil?
  She has been in Brazil for three days.

ago
ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (= three weeks before now)
- “When did Tom leave?” “Ten minutes ago.” (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner an hour ago.
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past (started/did/had/was, etc.).

Compare ago and for:

- When did Jane arrive in Brazil?
  She arrived in Brazil three days ago.
- How long has she been in Brazil?
  She has been in Brazil for three days.
Exercises

18.1 Write **for** or **since**.
1. Jane has been in Brazil **since** Monday.
2. Jane has been in Brazil **three days**.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia **twenty years**.
4. Jennifer is in her office. She has been there **since** 7:00.
5. Mexico has been an independent country **1821**.
6. The bus is late. We've been waiting **20 minutes**.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty **many years**.
8. Michael has been sick **a long time**. He has been in the hospital **October**.

18.2 Answer these questions. Use **ago**.
1. When was the last time you ate? ________________ Three hours ago
2. When was the last time you were sick? ________________
3. When was the last time you went to the movies? ________________
4. When was the last time you were in a car? ________________
5. When was the last time you went on vacation? ________________

18.3 Complete the sentences. Use **for** or **ago** with these words.
1. Jane arrived in Brazil **three days ago** (three days)
2. Jane has been in Brazil **for three days** (three days)
3. Lynn and Mark have been married **twenty years** (20 years)
4. Lynn and Mark got married **an hour** (20 years)
5. Dan arrived **an hour** (an hour)
6. I bought these shoes **a few days** (a few days)
7. Silvia has been studying English **six months** (six months)
8. Have you known Lisa **a long time**? (a long time)

18.4 Complete the sentences with **for** or **since**.
1. (Jane is in Brazil – she arrived there three days ago)
   ________________ Jane has been in Brazil **for three days**.
2. (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
   ________________ Jack has ________________
3. (It's raining – it started an hour ago)
   ________________ It's been ________________
4. (I know Sue – I met her in 2002)
   ________________ I've ________________
5. (Claire and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago)
   ________________ Claire and Matthew have ________________
6. (Liz is studying medicine at the university – she started three years ago)
   ________________ Liz has ________________
7. (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
   ________________ David has ________________

18.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:

   I've lived . . .  I've been . . .  I've been studying . . .  I've known . . .  I've had . . .
1. ________________
2. ________________
3. ________________
4. ________________
5. ________________
We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- "Where's Rebecca?" "She’s gone to bed." (= she is in bed now)
- We’ve bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It’s Rachel’s birthday tomorrow, and I haven’t bought her a present. (= I don’t have a present for her now)
- “Bob is away on vacation.” “Oh, where has he gone?” (= where is he now?)
- Have you met my brother, or should I introduce you?
- I was a very slow typist in college, but I’ve gotten faster.

Usually you can also use the simple past (he washed / I lost, etc.) in these situations. So you can say:

- “Where’s your key?” “I’ve lost it.” or “I lost it.”
- “Is Peter here?” “No, he’s gone home.” or “He went home.”
- We’ve bought a new car. or We bought a new car.

We use only the simple past (not the present perfect) with a finished time (yesterday, last week, etc.).

- I lost my key yesterday. (not I have lost)
- We bought a new car last week. (not we have bought)
19.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Use the present perfect. Choose from:
go to bed wash her car stop raining close the door fall down take a shower

1. She has washed her car.

2. ________________

3. ________________

4. ________________

5. ________________

6. ________________

19.2 Rewrite the sentences that have underlined verbs. Use the present perfect.

1. Lee Ming isn't here. He went home. ____________
   He has gone home.

2. I don't need to call them. I wrote them a letter. ____________
   ____________________________________________

3. Karen's not coming to the party. She broke her arm. ____________
   ____________________________________________

4. My brother and his wife don't live here any more. They moved to Seattle.
   ____________________________________________

5. I made a big mistake. _____________________________

6. I lost my wallet. _____________________________
   Did you see it anywhere? _____________________________

7. Did you hear? _____________________________
   Mark got married. _____________________________

Now rewrite these present perfect sentences in the simple past.

8. I've done the shopping. _____________________________

9. Brian has taken my bike again without asking. _____________________________

10. Have you told your friends the good news? _____________________________

11. We haven't paid the electric bill. _____________________________
**UNIT 20**

**A**

*Just = a short time ago*

We use *just* with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

- **A**: Are Diane and Paul here?  
  **B**: Yes, they've *just arrived*. or  
  Yes, they *just* arrived.

- **A**: Are you hungry?  
  **B**: No, I've *just had* dinner. or  
  I *just had* dinner.

- **A**: Is Tom here?  
  **B**: No, sorry, he's *just left*. or  
  He *just left*.

**B**

*Already = before you expected / before I expected*

We use *already* with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

- **A**: What time are Diane and Paul coming?  
  **B**: They've *already arrived* or  
  They *already arrived*.

- **A**: Jon, this is Emma.  
  **B**: Yes, I know. We've *already met*. or  
  We *already met*.

- **A**: It's only 9:00 and Anna *has already gone* to bed.  
  or  
  Anna *already went* to bed.  
  (= before I expected)

- **A**: Are Diane and Paul here?  
  **B**: Yes, they've *already arrived*. or  
  They *already arrived*.

- **A**: Jon, this is Emma.  
  **B**: Yes, I know. We've *already met*. or  
  We *already met*.

**C**

*Yet = until now*

We use *yet* with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*. We use *yet* in negative sentences and questions. *Yet* is usually at the end.

*Yet* in negative sentences

- **A**: Are Diane and Paul here?  
  **B**: No, they *haven't arrived* yet. or  
  ... they *didn't arrive* yet.  
  (but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)

- **A**: Does James know that you're going away?  
  **B**: No, I *haven't told* him yet. or  
  ... I *didn't tell* him yet.  
  (but B is going to tell him soon)

- **A**: Silvia has bought a new dress, but she *hasn't worn* it yet. or  
  ... she *didn't wear* it yet.

*Yet* in questions

- **A**: *Have* Diane and Paul *arrived* yet? or  
  *Did* Diane and Paul *arrive* yet?  
  **B**: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.

- **A**: *Has* Nicole *started* her new job *yet*? or  
  *Did* Nicole *start* her new job *yet*?  
  **B**: No, she's starting next week.

- **A**: This is my new dress.  
  **B**: Oh, it's nice. *Have* you *worn* it yet? or  
  *Did* you *wear* it yet?
20.1 Write a sentence with just for each picture.

1. They've just arrived.
2. He just did it.
3. They just finished it.
4. The race just started.

20.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

1. What time is Paul arriving? He's already arrived.
2. Do your friends want to see the movie? No, they haven’t seen it yet.
3. Don't forget to call Tom. I already called him.
4. When is Martin going to work? He is going to work soon.
5. Do you want to read the newspaper? She hasn’t read it yet.
6. When does Sarah start her new job? She is going to start it soon.

20.3 Rewrite these sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Did Sarah start her new job yet? Has Sarah started her new job yet?
2. Did you tell your father about the accident yet? I have told my father about the accident.
3. I just ate a big dinner, so I'm not hungry. I haven't eaten a big dinner yet.
4. Jenny can watch TV because she already did her homework. She has already done her homework.
5. You can't go to bed - you didn't brush your teeth yet. You have not brushed your teeth.
6. You can't talk to Pete because he just went home. He has just gone home.
7. Nicole just got out of the hospital, so she can't go to work. Nicole has just gotten out of the hospital.

Now rewrite these sentences in the simple past.

8. Have you given the post office our new address yet? Did you give the post office our new address yet?
9. The mail carrier hasn't come yet. The mail carrier hasn’t come yet.
10. I've just spoken to your sister. I did just speak to your sister.
11. Has Mario bought a new computer yet? Mario has bought a new computer.
12. Ted and Alice haven't told anyone they're getting married yet. Ted and Alice have not told anyone they're getting married.
13. We've already done our packing for our trip. We had already done our packing.
14. I've just swum a mile. I feel great! I had just swum a mile.

20.4 Write questions with the present perfect and yet.

1. Your friend has a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her: Have you started your new job yet?
2. Your friend has some new neighbors. Maybe he has met them. You ask him: Have you met your new neighbors yet?
3. Your friend has to pay her phone bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her: Has she paid her phone bill yet?
4. Tom was trying to sell his car. Maybe he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom: Has he sold his car yet?
I’ve lost my key. I lost my key last week.
(present perfect and simple past 3)

Sometimes you can use the present perfect (I have lost / he has gone, etc.) or the simple past (I lost / he went, etc.).

- “Is Peter here?” “No, he’s gone home.” or “No, he went home.”

But with a finished time (yesterday / last week, etc.), we use only the simple past (not the present perfect).

---

**simple past + finished time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We arrived</td>
<td>yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at 3:00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in 2002.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>six months ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Do not use the present perfect (have arrived / have done / have been, etc.) with a finished time:

- I saw Paula yesterday. (not I have seen)
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (not Where have you been)
- We didn’t take a vacation last year. (not We haven’t taken)
- “What did you do last night?” “I stayed at home.”
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the simple past to ask When . . . ? or What time . . . ?

- When did you buy your computer? (not When have you bought?)
- What time did Andy go out? (not What time has Andy gone out?)

---

**Compare:**

**Present perfect or simple past**

- I have lost my key. or I lost my key. (= I can’t find it now)
- Ben has gone home. or Ben went home. (= he isn’t here now)
- Have you had lunch? or Did you have lunch?
- The letter hasn’t arrived yet. or The letter didn’t arrive yet.

**Present perfect only**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time until now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Have you ever been to Spain? (= in your life, until now)
- My friend is a writer. He has written many books.
- The letter hasn’t arrived yet.
- We’ve lived in Boston for six years. (= we live there now)

**Simple past only**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>finished time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Did you go to Spain last year?
- William Shakespeare (1564-1616) wrote many plays and poems.
- The letter didn’t arrive yesterday.
- We lived in Chicago for six years, but now we live in Boston.
21.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Have you had lunch? Yes, I had it an hour ago.
2. Have you started your new job? Yes, I started last week.
3. Have your friends arrived? Yes, they arrived on Friday.
4. Has Sarah gone out? Yes, she went out at 5:00.
5. Have you worn your new suit? Yes, I wore it yesterday.

21.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1. I’ve lost my key. I can’t find it. OK
2. Have you seen Kate yesterday? Did you see
3. I’ve finished my work at 2:00. 
4. I’m ready now. I’ve finished my work. 
5. What time have you finished your work? 
6. Sue isn’t here. She’s gone out. 
7. Steve’s grandmother has died two years ago. 
8. Where have you been last night? 

21.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. My friend is a writer. He has written many books.
2. We didn’t take a vacation last year.
3. I played tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time did you go to bed last night?
5. Did you ever meet a famous person?
6. The weather was not very good yesterday.
7. Kathy travels a lot. She has visited many countries.
8. I turned off the light before leaving this morning.
9. I live in New York now, but I lived in Mexico for many years.
10. “What’s Peru like? Is it beautiful?” “I don’t know. I haven’t been there.”

21.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. A: Have you ever been to Florida? B: Yes, we went there on vacation two years ago.
   A: Did you have a good time? B: Yes, it was great.

2. A: What does your friend do? B: She’s a painter. She has won many prizes for her paintings.
   A: Have you seen any of her paintings? B: Yes, I saw some of her work last week.

3. Rose works in a factory, but she has had a lot of different jobs.
   Five years ago she was a waitress in a restaurant. After that, she worked on a ranch, but she didn’t enjoy it very much.

4. A: Do you know Martin’s sister? B: I have seen her a few times, but I never spoke to her. Have you ever spoken to her?
   A: Yes, I have met her at a party last week. She’s very nice.
The office is cleaned every day.
The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody cleans the office every day. (active)
The office is cleaned every day. (passive)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (active)
The office was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

The passive is:

simple present
am/is/are

simple past
was/were

past participle
cleaned
done
invented
built
injured
taken,
etc.

The past participle of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged, etc.).
For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken, etc.), see Appendixes 2–3.

■ Butter is made from milk.
■ Oranges are imported into Canada.
■ How often are these rooms cleaned?
■ I am never invited to parties.
■ This house was built 100 years ago.
■ These houses were built 100 years ago.
■ When was the telephone invented?
■ We weren't invited to the party last week.
■ “Was anybody injured in the accident?”
  “Yes, two people were taken to the hospital.”

Was/were born

■ I was born in Colombia in 1989. (not I am born)
■ “Where were you born?” “In Cairo.”

Passive + by

■ The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
  (= Alexander Graham Bell invented it)
■ I was bitten by a dog a few days ago.
■ Do you like these paintings? They were painted by a friend of mine.
Exercises

22.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.

Sentences 1–7 are present.
1. (the office / clean / every day) The office is cleaned every day.
2. (these rooms / clean / every day?) Are these rooms cleaned every day?
3. (glass / make / from sand) Glass ________________________________________
4. (stamps / sell / in a post office) _________________________________________
5. (this word / not / use / very often) _____________________________________
6. (we / allow / to park here?) ____________________________________________
7. (how / this word / pronounce?) ________________________________________

Sentences 8–15 are past.
8. (the office / clean / yesterday) The office was cleaned yesterday.
9. (the house / paint / last month) The house ______________________________
10. (my phone / steal / a few days ago) _____________________________________
11. (three people / injure / in the accident) A _____________________________
12. (when / this bridge / build?) ___________________________________________
13. (I / not / wake up / by the noise) _______________________________________
14. (how / these windows / break?) ________________________________________
15. (you / invite / to Jon’s party last week?) ________________________________

22.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

1. (This house built)100 years ago. This house was built 100 years ago.
2. Soccer plays in most countries of the world. _________________________
3. Why did the letter send to the wrong address? _______________________
4. A garage is a place where cars repair. ________________________________
5. Where are you born?
6. How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? _
7. Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. _________________
8. When was invented the bicycle? __________________

22.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:
clean  damage find give invite make make show steal take

1. The room is cleaned every day.
2. I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to the hospital.
3. Paper is made from wood.
4. There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms were damaged.
5. “Where did you get this picture?” “It was given to me by a friend of mine.”
6. Many British programs are shown on American television.
7. “Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?” “No. They were invited, but they didn’t go.”
8. “How old is this movie?” “It was made in 1965.”
9. My car was stolen last week, but the next day it was taken by the police.

22.4 Where were they born?

1. (Makoto / Tokyo) Makoto was born in Tokyo.
2. (Isabel / São Paulo) Isabel ___________________________________________
3. (her parents / Rio de Janeiro) Her _______________________________________
4. (you / ???) I ______________________________________________________
5. (your mother / ???) ________________________________________________
Is/are being . . . (present continuous passive)

- My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses are being built across from the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and simple present:
- The office is being cleaned right now. (present continuous)
  The office is cleaned every day. (simple present)
- In the United States, football games are usually played on weekends, but no big games are being played next weekend.

For the present continuous and simple present, see Units 8 and 26.

Has/have been . . . (present perfect passive)

- My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I’m not going to the party. I haven’t been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
- Has this shirt been washed? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and simple past:
- The room isn’t dirty any more. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)
  The room was cleaned yesterday. (simple past)
- I can’t find my keys. I think they’ve been stolen. (present perfect)
  My keys were stolen last week. (simple past)

For the present perfect and simple past, see Units 19–21.
23.1 What's happening?

1. The car __is being repaired__
2. A bridge _____________________________
3. The windows ____________
4. The grass ___________________________

23.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ... ) or the present perfect (has/have been ... ).

1. (the office / clean) __The office is being cleaned__
2. (the shirts / iron) __The shirts have been ironed__
3. (the window / break) The window ________________________________
4. (the roof / repair) The roof ______________________________________
5. (the car / damage) _______________________________________________________________________
6. (the houses / tear / down) ______________________________________________________________
7. (the trees / cut / down) ________________________________________________
8. (they / invite / to a party) __________________________________________

23.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 22 before you do this exercise.)

1. I can't use my office right now. __It is being painted__ (paint).
2. We didn't go to the party. We __weren't invited__ (not / invite).
3. The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It __is being repaired__ (repair).
4. The washing machine ____________________________ (repair) yesterday afternoon.
5. A factory is a place where things __are made__ (make).
6. How old are these houses? When __they were built__ (they / build)?
7. A: __What is the computer being used__ at the moment?
    B: Yes, Steve is using it.
8. I've never seen these flowers before. What __they are called__ (they / call)?
9. My sunglasses __were stolen__ (they / call) at the beach yesterday.
10. The bridge is closed. It __is not being repaired__ (not / repair) yet.
### UNIT 24

#### A

**Be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working, etc.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Past Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are + -ing</td>
<td>was/were + -ing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Please be quiet. I'm working.
- It isn't raining right now.
- What are you doing tonight?
- I was working when she arrived.
- It wasn't raining, so we didn't need an umbrella.
- What were you doing at 3:00?

→ Units 3-4 and 26

→ Unit 13

---

#### B

**Be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten, etc.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Present Passive</th>
<th>Simple Past Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are + past participle</td>
<td>was/were + past participle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'm never invited to parties.
- Butter is made from milk.
- These offices aren't cleaned every day.
- The office was cleaned yesterday.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- How was the window broken?
- Where were you born?

→ Unit 22

---

#### C

**Have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been, etc.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have/has + past participle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've lived in this house for 10 years.
- Tom has never ridden a horse.
- Kate hasn't been to South America.
- Where have Paul and Nicole gone?

→ Units 16-17, 19-21

---

#### D

**Do/does/did + base form (clean/like/eat/go, etc.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Present Negative and Questions</th>
<th>Simple Past Negative and Questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do/does + base form</td>
<td>did + base form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I like coffee, but I don't like tea.
- Chris doesn't go out very often.
- What do you usually do on weekends?
- Does Silvia live alone?
- I didn't watch TV yesterday.
- It didn't rain last week.
- What time did Paul and Nicole go out?

→ Units 6-7

→ Unit 12

---

**irregular verbs → Unit 25, Appendixes 2-3**
Exercises

24.1 Write *is/are* or *do/does*.

1. **Do** you work at night?
2. Where **are** they going?
3. Why **______** you looking at me?
4. **______** Bill live near you?
5. **______** you like to cook?

2. **______** the sun shining?
3. What time **______** the stores close?
4. **______** Maria working today?
5. **______** this word mean?

24.2 Write *am not/isn't/aren't* or *don't/doesn't*. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom **doesn't** work at night.
2. I'm very tired. I **_________** want to go out tonight.
3. I'm very tired. I **_________** going out tonight.
4. Gary **_________** working this week. He's on vacation.
5. My parents are usually at home. They **_________** go out very often.
6. Nicole has traveled a lot, but she **_________** speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the television. I **_________** watching it.
8. Liz has invited us to her party next week, but we **_________** going.

24.3 Write *was/were/did/have/has*.

1. Where **were** your shoes made?
2. **______** you go out last night?
3. What **_________** you doing at 10:30?
4. **______** your mother born?
5. **______** Barbara gone home?
6. What time **_________** she go?
7. When **_________** these houses built?
8. **_________** Steve arrived yet?
9. Why **_________** you go home early?
10. **_________** they been married?

24.4 Write *is/are/was/were/have/has*.

1. Joe **has** lost his passport.
2. This bridge **_________** built 10 years ago.
3. **______** you finished your work yet?
4. This town is always clean. The streets **_________** cleaned every day.
5. Where **_________** you born?
6. I **_________** just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7. Glass **_________** made from sand.
8. This is a very old photograph. It **_________** taken a long time ago.

24.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

**damage**  **rain**  **enjoy**  **go**  **pronounce**  **eat**
**listen**  **use**  **open**  **go**  **understand**

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's **raining**.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you **go** to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you **_________** all of them?
4. How is your new job? Are you **_________** it?
5. My car was badly **_________** in the accident, but I was OK.
6. Chris has a car, but she doesn't **_________** it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has **_________** away for a few days.
8. I don't **_________** the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Martin is in his room. He's **_________** to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it **_________**?
11. How do you **_________** this window? Can you show me?
Regular and irregular verbs

Regular verbs
The simple past and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:
clean → cleaned  live → lived  paint → painted  study → studied
Simple past (→ Unit 11)
- I cleaned my room yesterday.
- Charlie studied engineering in college.

Past participle
have/has + past participle (present perfect → Units 16–17, 19–21):
- I have cleaned my room.
- Tina has lived in Miami for 10 years.
be (is/are/were/has been, etc.) + past participle (passive → Units 22–23):
- These rooms are cleaned every day.
- My car has been repaired.

Irregular verbs
The simple past and past participle of irregular verbs do not end in -ed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple past</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the simple past and past participle are the same. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple past</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I made a cake yesterday.  (simple past)
- I have made some coffee.  (past participle – present perfect)
- Butter is made from milk.  (past participle – present passive)

Sometimes the simple past and past participle are different. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple past</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Somebody broke this window last night.  (simple past)
- Somebody has broken this window.  (past participle – present perfect)
- This window was broken last night.  (past participle – past passive)
Exercises

25.1 Write the simple past / past participle of these verbs. (The simple past and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1. make  made  6. enjoy  ________  11. hear  ________
2. cut  ________  7. buy  ________  12. put  ________
3. say  ________  8. sit  ________  13. catch  ________
4. bring  ________  9. leave  ________  14. watch  ________
5. pay  ________  10. happen  ________  15. understand  ________

25.2 Write the simple past and past participle of these verbs.

1. break  broke  broken  8. come  ________
2. begin  ________  9. know  ________
3. eat  ________  10. take  ________
4. drink  ________  11. go  ________
5. drive  ________  12. give  ________
6. speak  ________  13. throw  ________
7. write  ________  14. get  ________

25.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1. I ________ my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has ________ this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I ________ very well last night. (sleep)
4. We ________ a really good movie yesterday. (see)
5. It ________ a lot while we were on vacation. (rain)
6. I’ve ________ my bag. (lose) Have you ________ it? (see)
7. Rosa’s bicycle was ________ last week. (steal)
8. I ________ to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you ________ your work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping mall was ________ about 20 years ago. (build)
11. Anna ________ to drive when she was 16. (learn)
12. I’ve never ________ a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I’ve ________ her for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday I ________ and ________ my leg. (fall / hurt)
15. My brother ________ in the Boston Marathon last year. Have you ever ________ in a marathon? (run / run)

25.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cost</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>meet</th>
<th>sell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>win</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I have ________ some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have you ________ John about your new job?
3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn’t play very well, but we ________ the game.
4. I know Gary, but I’ve never ________ his wife.
5. We were ________ by loud music in the middle of the night.
6. Stephanie jumped into the river and ________ to the other side.
7. “Did you like the movie?” “Yes, I ________ it was very good.”
8. Many different languages are ________ in the Philippines.
9. Our vacation ________ a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10. Have you ever ________ a very fast car?
11. All the tickets for the concert were ________ very quickly.
12. A bird ________ in through the open window while we were having our dinner.
What are you doing tomorrow?

We use **am/is/are + -ing** (present continuous) for something happening now:
- "Where are Sue and Amanda?"  "They're playing tennis in the park."
- Please be quiet. I'm working.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the **future** (tomorrow / next week, etc.):
- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I'm not working next week.

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:
- Sophie is going to the dentist on Friday. (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We're having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting your friends tonight?
- What are you doing tomorrow night?
- I'm not going out tonight. I’m staying at home.

You can also say, "I'm going to do something." (→ Unit 27).

Be careful! Do not use the **simple present** (I stay / do you go, etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:
- I’m staying at home this evening. (not I stay)
- Are you going out tonight? (not Do you go)
- Lisa isn’t coming to the party next week. (not Lisa doesn’t come)

But we use the simple present for schedules (buses, movies, classes, etc.):
- The plane arrives in New York at 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- What time does the movie end tonight?

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present continuous (usually for people)</th>
<th>Simple present (for schedules)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to a concert tomorrow.</td>
<td>The concert starts at 7:30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time are you leaving?</td>
<td>What time does your plane leave?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

26.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

1. Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2. Richard ______________________ to the movies.
3. Rachel ___________________________________
4. ______________________________ lunch with Ken.
5. ______________________________

26.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?) ___________________________
2. (you / work / next week?) ___________________________
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow night?) ___________________________
4. (what time / your friends / come?) ___________________________
5. (when / Liz / go / on vacation?) ___________________________

26.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. I'm staying at home tonight. ___________________________
2. I'm going to the theater on Monday. ___________________________
3. ___________________________
4. ___________________________
5. ___________________________
6. ___________________________

26.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving, etc.) or simple present (the train leaves, etc.).

1. “Are you going ______ (you / go) out tonight?” “No, I'm too tired.”
2. We're going ______ (we / go) to a concert tonight. It starts ______ (it / start) at 7:30.
3. Listen to this! _________________________ (Karen / get) married next month!
4. A: My parents _________________________ (go) on vacation next week.
   B: Oh, that's nice. Where _________________________ (they / go)?
5. Silvia is taking an English course this semester. The course _________________________ (end) on Friday.
6. There's a party tomorrow night, but _________________________ (I / not / go).
7. _________________________ (I / go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come, too?
8. A: How _________________________ (we / meet) at John's house at 8:00.
   B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus _________________________ (leave) at midnight.
9. A: Do you want to go to the movies tonight?
   B: Yes, what time _________________________ (the movie / begin)?
10. A: What _________________________ (you / do) tomorrow afternoon?
    B: _________________________ (I / work).
I'm going to do something

She is going to watch TV tonight.

We use am/is/are going to . . . for the future:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>he/she/it is (not) going to do . . . drink . . . watch . . .</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they are</td>
<td>buy . . .? eat . . .? wear . . .?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I decided to do it → I'm going to do it

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the wedding next week?
- "Your hands are dirty." “Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.”
- Are you going to invite Martin to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 26):

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

Something is going to happen

Something is going to happen = we can see now that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
  (black clouds now → rain)
- Oh, no! It's 9:00 and I'm not ready. I'm going to be late.
  (9:00 now and not ready → late)
27.1 What are these people saying?

27.2 Complete the sentences. Use going to + these verbs:

do  eat  give  lie down  stay  walk  wash  watch  wear

1. My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
2. What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3. It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I'm going to take a walk.
4. Steve is going to San Diego next week. He's going to stay with some friends.
5. I'm hungry. I'm going to wash this sandwich.
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. We're going to give her a present.
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She's going to lie down for an hour.
8. The president's speech is on television tonight. Are you going to watch it?
9. What are you going to give Rachel when she finishes school?

27.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?

1. It's going to rain. _______________________________________
2. The shelf ________________________________________________
3. The car __________________________________________________
4. He _______________________________________________________

27.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I'm _______________________________________________________
2. _________________________________________________________
3. _________________________________________________________
Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8:30 until 4:30.
It is 11:00 now. Sarah is at work.
At 11:00 yesterday, she was at work.
At 11:00 tomorrow, she will be at work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>will (‘ll)</th>
<th>be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will not (won’t)</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>will</th>
<th>be?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>win?</td>
<td>eat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>come?, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

’ll = will: I’ll (I will) / you’ll / she’ll, etc.

won’t = will not: I won’t (= I will not) / you won’t / she won’t, etc.

We use will for the future (tomorrow / next week, etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Los Angeles. Tomorrow she’ll be in Mexico City. Next week she’ll be in New York.
- You can call me tonight. I’ll be at home.
- Leave the old bread in the yard. The birds will eat it.
- We’ll probably go out tonight.
- Will you be at home tonight?
- I won’t be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don’t drink coffee before you go to bed. You won’t sleep.

We often say I think . . . will . . .:
- I think Kelly will pass her driver’s test.
- I don’t think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the test will be difficult?

We do not use will for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 26–27):
- We’re going to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (not We will go)
- I’m not working tomorrow. (not I won’t work)
- Are you going to take your driver’s test tomorrow? (not Will you take)
28.1 Helen is traveling in South America. Complete the sentences with *she was, she’s, or she’ll be.*

1. Yesterday __________ in Rio de Janeiro.
2. Tomorrow __________ in Bogotá.
3. Last week __________ in Santiago.
4. Next week __________ in Caracas.
5. Right now __________ in Lima.
6. Three days ago __________ in Buenos Aires.
7. At the end of her trip __________ very tired.

28.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use: *I'll be... or I'll probably be... or I don't know where I'll be.*

1. (at 10:00 tomorrow) ________ or ________
2. (one hour from now) ____________________________
3. (at midnight tonight) __________________________
4. (at 3:00 tomorrow afternoon) __________________
5. (two years from now) __________________________

28.3 Put in will ('ll) or won't.

1. Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You __________ sleep.
2. “Are you ready yet?” “Not yet. I __________ ready in five minutes.”
3. I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I __________ at home tomorrow.
4. It __________ rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5. A: I don't feel very well tonight.
   B: Well, go to bed early and you __________ feel better in the morning.
6. It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He __________ be 25.
7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It __________ happen again.

28.4 Write sentences with *I think... or I don't think.*

1. (Kelly will pass the driver's test) ________
2. (Kelly won't pass the driver's test) ________
3. (we'll win the game) ________
4. (I won't be here tomorrow) ________
5. (Sue will like her present) ________
6. (they won't get married) ________
7. (you won't like the movie) ________

28.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)

1. We'll go / We're going to the theater tonight. We've got tickets. *(We're going is right)*
2. “What will you do / are you doing tomorrow night?” “Nothing. I'm free.”
3. They'll leave / They're leaving tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8:40.
4. I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
5. “Why are you putting on your coat?” “I'll go / I'm going out.”
6. Do you think Claire will call / is calling us tonight?
7. Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
8. Let's fly to Miami instead of driving. It won't take / isn't taking as long.
9. A: What are your plans for the weekend?
   B: Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.
You can use I'll... (I will) when you offer something or decide to do something:
- “My suitcase is very heavy.” “I'll carry it for you.”
- “I'll call you tomorrow, OK?” “OK, bye.”

We often say I think I'll... / I don't think I'll... when we decide to do something:
- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit outside.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

Do not use the simple present (I go / I call, etc.) in sentences like these:
- I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (not I call you)
- I think I'll go to bed. (not I go to bed)

Do not use I'll... for something you decided before (→ Units 26–27):
- I'm working tomorrow. (not I'll work)
- There's a good program on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (not I'll watch)
- What are you doing this weekend? (not What will you do)

Shall I...? Shall we...?

Shall I / Shall we...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?
- It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- “Shall I call you tonight?” “OK.”
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- What shall we have for dinner?

We use should in the same way.
- “Should I call you tonight?” “OK.”
- It's a nice day. Should we go for a walk?
- What should we have for dinner?
29.1 Complete the sentences. Use *I'll* (*I will*) + these verbs:

carry  do  eat  send  show  sit  stay

1. My suitcase is very heavy.  
   *I'll* carry it for you.

2. Enjoy your vacation.  
   Thank you. *I'll* send you a postcard.

3. I don't want this banana.  
   Well, I'm hungry. *I'll* show it.

4. Do you want a chair?  
   No, it's OK. *I'll* stay on the floor.

5. Did you call Jenny?  
   Oh no, I forgot. *I'll* show it now.

6. Are you coming with me?  
   No, I don't think so. *I'll* bring it here.

7. How do you use this camera?  
   Give it to me and *I'll* show you.

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use *I think I'll . . .* or *I don't think I'll . . .* + these verbs:

buy  buy  go  have  play

1. It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* out.

2. I'm hungry. *I think I'll* buy something to eat.

3. I feel very tired. *I don't think I'll* play tennis.

4. I like this hat. *I think I'll* buy it.

5. This camera is too expensive. *I don't think I'll* buy it.

29.3 Which is right?

1. *I'll* call / I call you tomorrow, OK? (*I'll call* is right)

2. I haven't done the shopping yet. *I do* / *I'll* do it later.

3. I like sports. *I watch* / *I'll* watch a lot of sports on TV.

4. I need some exercise. *I think I go* / *I'll* go for a walk.

5. Gerry is going to *buy* / *will* buy a new car. He told me last week.

6. "This letter is for Rose." *I give* / *I'll* give / *I'm going to give* it to her.

7. A: *Are you doing* / *Will you do* anything this evening?  
   B: Yes, I'm going / *I'll* go out with some friends.

8. I can't go out with you tomorrow night. *I work* / *I'm working* / *I'll* work.

9. I like this hat. *I think I buy* / *I'll* buy it.

29.4 What does Anne say to Kathy? Find the right answers.

1. It's very warm in this room.  
   *d) If you want. Where should we go?*

2. This TV program isn't very good.  
   *b) Yes, who shall we invite?*

3. Should we have a party?  
   *c) No, shall I go and get some?*

4. It's dark in this room.  
   *e) Should I turn on the light?*

5. Should I go to the store?  
   *f) OK, how many shall we buy?*

6. Shall we go out?  
   *g) Should I turn it off?*

7. Shall I wait here?  
   *h) No, come with me.*

8. Do we have any bread?  
   *i) No, it's OK. I'll go.*

9. Should we get some lottery tickets?  
   *a) If you want. Where should we go?*
**UNIT 30**

**might**

**I might** = it is possible that I will:
- I might go to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
- A: When is Rebecca going to call you?
  B: I don't know. She might call this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- “Are you going out tonight?” “I might.” (= I might go out)

Study the difference:
- I'm playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
  I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
- Rebecca is going to call later. (sure)
  Rebecca might call later. (possible)

**I might** + be form (might be, might rain, etc.):**
- It might rain. (= it is possible that it will rain)
- He might go to Costa Rica. (= it is possible that he will go to Costa Rica)

**I might not** = it is possible that I will not:
- I might not go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue might not come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

**May**

You can use may in the same way. I may = I might:
- I may go to the movies tonight. (= I might go)
- Sue may not come to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I...? = Is it OK to...? / Can I...?:
- May I ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- “May I sit here?” “Sure.”
30.1 Write sentences with **might**.

1. (it’s possible that I’ll go to the movies) I **might go to the movies**.
2. (it’s possible that I’ll see you tomorrow) I ___________________.
3. (it’s possible that Sarah will forget to call) _____________________.
4. (it’s possible that it will snow today) ________________________.
5. (it’s possible that I’ll be late tonight) _________________________.

Write sentences with **might not**.

6. (it’s possible that Mark will not be here next week) _________________________.
7. (it’s possible that I won’t have time to go out) _________________________.

30.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.

- fish
- Italy
- Monday
- a new car
- take a trip
- take a taxi

1. Where are you going for your vacation? I’m not sure. **I might go to Italy.**
2. What are you doing this weekend? I don’t know. I ____________________.
3. When will you see Kate again? I’m not sure. ________________________.
4. What are you going to have for dinner? I don’t know. I _____________________.
5. How are you going to get home tonight? I haven’t decided yet. _____________________.

30.3 You ask Bill questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1. Are you playing tennis tomorrow? Yes, in the afternoon.
3. Are you going to get up early? Maybe.
4. Are you working tomorrow? No, I’m not.
5. Will you be at home tomorrow morning? Maybe.
7. Are you going out in the afternoon? Yes, I am.

Now write about Bill. Use **might** where necessary.

1. **He’s playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.**
2. **He might go out tomorrow evening.**
3. ______________________________________________________________________
4. ______________________________________________________________________
5. ______________________________________________________________________
6. ______________________________________________________________________
7. ______________________________________________________________________
8. ______________________________________________________________________

30.4 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.

1. ____________________________________________
2. ____________________________________________
3. ____________________________________________
can and could

**can + base form** (can do / can play / can come, etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
<th>can do play see come, etc.</th>
<th>can do? see? come?, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>can play the piano.</td>
<td>Could you open the door, please?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I can do something** = I know how to do it, or it is possible for me to do it:

- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano, too.
- Sarah can speak Italian, but she can't speak Spanish.
- "Can you swim?" "Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer."
- "Can you change a twenty-dollar bill?" "I'm sorry, I can't."
- I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel can't come.

**For the past** (yesterday / last week, etc.), we use could/couldn't:

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Maria came to the United States, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night, but I couldn't sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel couldn't come.


We use Can you . . . ? or Could you . . . ? when we ask people to do things:

- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a minute, please? or Could you wait . . . ?

We use Can I have . . . ? or Could I have . . . ? to ask for something:

- (in a store) Can I have change for a dollar, please? or Could I have . . . ?

Can I . . . ? or Could I . . . ? = is it OK to do something?:

- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gary, please? or could I speak . . . ?
31.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

1. ____________
2. ____________
3. ____________
4. ____________
5. ____________
6. ____________

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use *I can* or *I can’t*.

7. I ____________
8. ____________
9. ____________

10. ____________
11. ____________
12. ____________

31.2 Complete these sentences. Use *can* or *can’t* + one of these verbs:
- come, find, hear, see, speak

1. I’m sorry, but we ____________ to your party next Saturday.
2. I like this hotel room. You ____________ the mountains from the window.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I ____________ you.
4. Have you seen my suitcase? I ____________ it.
5. Catherine got the job because she ____________ five languages.

31.3 Complete these sentences. Use *can’t* or *couldn’t* + one of these verbs:
- decide, eat, find, go, go, sleep

1. I was tired, but I ____________
2. I wasn’t hungry yesterday. I ____________
3. Kate doesn’t know what to do. She ____________
4. I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday, but I ____________
5. James ____________ to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6. Paula ____________ to the meeting last week. She was sick.

31.4 What do you say in these situations? Use *can* or *could*.

1. (open)
   - Could you open the door, please?
2. (pass)
   - ____________
3. (turn down)
   - ____________
4. (have)
   - ____________
5. (look)
   - ____________
6. (use)
   - ____________
must

We use **must** when we believe that something is true.
- You worked 10 hours today. You **must be** tired.
- My brother has worked at your company for years. You **must know** him.
- My friends have the same zip code as you. They **must live** near you.
- (on the telephone) This isn’t the Smiths? I’m sorry. I **must have** the wrong number.

We use **must not** when we believe that something is not true.
- The phone rang eight times and Karen didn’t answer. She **must not be** at home.
- Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He **must not have** a car.
- The Silvas are always home on Fridays. They **must not work** then.

**Must** has another meaning. You **must do** something = it is necessary to do it.
- You **must be** careful with this knife.
  It’s very sharp.
- Workers **must wear** safety glasses at this machine.
- In the United States, you **must be** 18 to vote.

For the **past** (**yesterday, last week**, etc.), we use **had to** . . . (**not must**).
- They were in a dangerous situation.
  They **had to be** careful.
  (**not** They must be careful.)
- We **had to wear** safety glasses when we visited the factory last week.
  (**not** We must wear)

You **must not do** something = it is necessary not to do it; it is the wrong thing to do.
- Bicyclists **must not ride** on the sidewalk.
  (=* they must ride in the street*)
- You **must not be** late for school again!
32.1 Complete the sentences. Use must be + these verbs:

for you good hungry in the kitchen tired very happy

1. Silvia worked 10 hours today. She _____________.
2. It's evening, and you haven't eaten anything all day. You _____________.
3. It's the most popular restaurant in town, so the food _____________.
5. The phone's ringing. I know it's not for me. It _____________.
6. My keys aren't in the living room, so they _____________.

32.2 Complete the sentences. Use must + these verbs:

drink have know like work

1. My brother has worked at your company for years. You ____________ him.
2. Marilyn wears something blue every day. She ____________ the color blue.
3. The Hills have six children and three dogs. They ____________ a big house.
4. Mrs. Lee bought three gallons of milk at the store. Her children ____________ a lot of milk.
5. I know Mrs. Romo has a job, but she's always home during the day. She ____________ at night.

32.3 Write must or must not.

1. (on the telephone) This isn't the Smiths'? I ____________ have the wrong number.
2. Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He ____________ have a car.
3. Brandon is very thin. He ____________ eat very much.
4. I never see my neighbor in the morning. He ____________ leave for work very early.
5. I always have to repeat things when I talk to Kelly. She ____________ hear very well.
6. Jim wears the same clothes every day. He ____________ have many clothes.

32.4 Complete the sentences. Use must + these verbs:

be be get know take wear

1. In most of the United States, you ____________ at least 16 to get a driver's license.
2. For this job, you ____________ both Spanish and German.
3. People in the front seat of a car ____________ a seat belt.
4. High school students who want to go to college ____________ good grades.
5. This highway is closed. Drivers ____________ another road.
6. A tennis player ____________ very good to play professionally.

32.5 Write must, mustn't, or had to.

1. We ____________ forget to send Sam a birthday card.
2. We ____________ wear safety glasses when we visited the factory.
3. I ____________ hurry or I'll be late.
4. “Why were you so late?” “I ____________ wait half an hour for the bus.”
5. Keep these papers in a safe place. You ____________ lose them.
6. Bicyclists ____________ follow the same traffic rules as drivers.
7. We ____________ forget to turn off the lights when we leave.
8. I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I ____________ work.
You should do something = it is a good thing to do; it is the right thing to do:
- Tom doesn’t study enough. He should study harder.
- It’s a good movie. You should go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you should always watch the ball.

Should I/we do something? = is it a good thing to do?
- Should I invite Karen to dinner?
- Should we make something special for dinner?

You shouldn’t do something = it is not a good thing to do (shouldn’t = should not):
- Tom shouldn’t go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You shouldn’t watch TV so much.

We often say I think . . . should . . . :
- I think Lisa should buy some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It’s late. I think I should go home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
  B: Yes, I think you should.

I don’t think . . . should . . . :
- I don’t think you should work so hard.
  (= I don’t think it is a good idea.)
- I don’t think we should go yet. It’s too early.

Do you think . . . should . . . ?:
- Do you think I should buy this hat?
- What time do you think we should go home?

Should is different from have to.
- I should study tonight, but I think I’ll go to the movies.
- I have to study tonight. I can’t go to the movies.

Another way to say should is ought to:
- I ought to study tonight, but I think I’ll go to the movies. (= I should study)
- I think Lisa ought to buy some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)
33.1 Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + these verbs:

- **eat**
- **go**
- **read**
- **visit**
- **watch**
- **wear**

1. When you play tennis **you should watch** the ball.
2. It's late, and you're very tired. **__________** to bed.
3. **__________** plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4. If you have time, **__________** the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you're driving, **__________** a seat belt.
6. It's a very good book. **__________** it.

33.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn't . . . so . . . .**

1. **She shouldn't watch TV so much.**
2. **He ___________________________________.**
3. **H e ___________________________________.**
4. **___________________________________.**

33.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with **Do you think I should . . . ?**

1. You are in a store. You are trying on a jacket, (buy?)
   You ask your friend: **Do you think / should buy this jacket?**
2. You can't drive. (learn?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think **__________**
3. You don't like your job. (get another job?)
   You ask your friend: **__________**
4. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
   You ask your friend: **__________**

33.4 Write sentences with **I think . . . should . . . and I don't think . . . should . . . .**

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) / think we should c/o home now.
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) / don't think you should buy it.
3. You don't need your car. (sell it) ___________________________________________________________
4. Karen needs a change. (take a trip) ___________________________________________________________
5. Sally and Dan are too young. (get married) ____________________________________________________
6. You're still sick. (go to work) ______________________________________________________________
7. James isn't feeling well today. (go to the doctor) ________________________________________________
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) ___________________________________________________

33.5 What do you think? Write sentences with **should.**

1. I think **everybody should learn another language.**
2. I think everybody
3. I think
4. I don't think
5. I think I
I have to... 

I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it; I am obliged to do it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to wear, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jane starts work at 7:00, so she has to get up at 6:00.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driver's license.

The past (yesterday / last week, etc.) is had to . . . :
- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):  

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>I/we/you/they have to . . .?</th>
<th>I/we/you/they don't have to . . .?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did</th>
<th>I/we/you/they have to . . .?</th>
<th>I/we/you/they didn't have to . . .?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jane have to work on Saturdays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:
- I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- Mike doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

**must**

You can also use must to say it is necessary to do something.
- You must pass a test before you can get a driver's license.
- In many countries, men must do military service.

We use have to more often than must, especially in spoken English.
34.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + these verbs:

hit  read  speak  take  travel  wear

1. My eyes are not very good. I ___ have to wear ___ glasses.
2. At the end of the course all the students ___ ____________ a test.
3. Sarah is studying literature. She ___ ____________ a lot of books.
4. Alberto doesn’t understand much English. You ___ very slowly to him.
5. Kate is not at home much. She ___ ____________ a lot for her job.
6. In tennis you ___ ____________ the ball over the net.

34.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + these verbs:

answer  buy  change  go  take  wake  walk

1. We ___ home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. I ___ now. I’ll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the store after work yesterday. I ___ some food.
4. This train doesn’t go all the way downtown. You ___ at First Avenue.
5. We took a test yesterday. We ___ six questions out of ten.
6. I'm going to bed. I ___ up early tomorrow.
7. Amy and her cousin can't go out with us tonight. They ___ care of

34.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1. I have to get up early tomorrow. 
   What time ___ do you have to get up ___ ?
2. George had to wait a long time. 
   How long ___ ___ ___ ___ ?
3. Liz has to go somewhere. 
   Where ___ ___ ___ ___ ?
4. We had to pay a lot of money. 
   How much ___ ___ ___ ___ ?
5. I have to do some work. 
   What exactly ___ ___ ___ ___ ?
6. They had to leave early. 
   Why ___ ___ ___ ___ ?
7. Paul has to go to Moscow. 
   When ___ ___ ___ ___ ?

34.4 Write sentences with don’t/doesn’t/didn’t have to . . .

1. Why are you going out? You ___ don’t have to go ___ out.
2. Why is Sue waiting? She ___ ___ ___ ___ .
3. Why did you get up early? You ___ ___ ___ ___ .
4. Why is Paul working so hard? He ___ ___ ___ ___ .
5. Why do you want to leave now? We ___ ___ ___ ___ .
6. Why did they tell me something I already know? They ___ ___ ___ ___ .

34.5 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1. (every day) I have to drive 50 miles to work every day.
2. (every day) ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ .
3. (yesterday) ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ .
4. (tomorrow) ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ .
5. (last week) ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ .
6. (when I was younger) ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ .
Would you like . . . ? = Do you want . . . ?

We use Would you like . . . ? to offer things:

- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a piece of candy?
  B: Yes, thanks.
- A: Which would you like, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.

We use Would you like to . . . ? to invite somebody:

- Would you like to go for a walk?
- A: Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?
  B: Yes, I'd love to.
- What would you like to do tonight?

I'd like . . . is a polite way to say “I want.” (I'd like = I would like)

- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. I'd like to stay home tonight.

Would you like . . . ? and Do you like . . . ?

Would you like . . . ? / I'd like . . .

- Would you like some coffee? = Do you want some coffee?
  - A: Would you like to go to the movies tonight?
    (= do you want to go tonight?)
    B: Yes, I'd love to.
  - I'd like an orange, please.
    (= can I have an orange?)
  - What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like . . . ? / I like . . .

- Do you like coffee? = Do you think coffee is good?
  - A: Do you like to go to the movies?
    (= do you want to go to the movies? (in general))
    B: Yes, I go to the movies a lot.
  - I like oranges. (in general)
  - What do you like to do on weekends?
Exercises

35.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use *Would you like* . . . ?

1. Would you like a piece of candy? ____________

2. ______________________________

3. ______________________________

4. ______________________________

5. ______________________________

6. ______________________________

35.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use *Would you like* to . . . ?

1. You want to go to the movies tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
   You say: **Would you like to go to the movies tonight?**

2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play, too. (play)
   You say: _______________________________________________________

3. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
   You say: _______________________________________________________

4. It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
   You say: _______________________________________________________

35.3 Which is right?

1. “Do you like / Would you like a piece of candy?” “Yes, thanks.” *(Would you like is right)*
2. “Do you like / Would you like bananas?” “Yes, I love them.”
3. “Do you like / Would you like some ice cream?” “No, thank you.”
4. “What do you like / would you like to drink?” “A glass of water, please.”
5. “Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?” “Not now. Maybe later.”
6. I like / I’d like tomatoes, but I don’t eat them very often.
7. What time do you like / would you like to have dinner tonight?
8. “Do you like / Would you like something to eat?” “No, thanks. I’m not hungry.”
9. “Do you like / Would you like your new job?” “Yes, I’m enjoying it.”
10. I’m tired. I like / I’d like to go to bed now.
12. “What kind of music do you like / would you like?” “All kinds.”
I'd rather...

**I would rather do something** = I would prefer to do something:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I'd rather</strong> (I would rather)</td>
<td><strong>I'd rather not</strong> (I would rather not)</td>
<td><strong>would you rather</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>stay...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>be...?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I don't really want to go out. I'd rather stay home. (= I'd prefer to stay home)
- "Should we go now?" "No, not yet. I'd rather wait until later."
- I'd like to go now, but Tom would rather wait until later.
- I don't like to be late. I'd rather be early.
- I'm feeling tired. I'd rather not go out tonight. (= I'd prefer not to go out)
- Sue is feeling tired. She'd rather not go out tonight.
- We're not hungry. We'd rather not eat yet.
- "Would you like to go out tonight?" "I'd rather not." (= I'd rather not go out)
- "Would you rather have milk or juice?" "Juice, please."
- Which would you rather do – go to the movies or watch a DVD at home?

**We say “I'd rather do something” (not to do something):**
- I'd rather sit on the floor. (not I'd rather to sit)
- Sue would rather not go out. (not would rather not to go)

But we say "I'd prefer to do something”:
- I'd prefer to sit on the floor.
- Sue would prefer not to go out.

**You can say “I'd rather... than...”:**
- I'd rather go out than stay home.
- I'd rather have a dog than a cat.
- We'd rather go to the movies than watch a DVD at home.
- I'd rather be at home right now than here.
36.1 Look at the pictures and complete B’s sentences. Use *I’d rather* . . .

1. Would you like to sit here? No, thanks. *I’d rather sit* ________ on the floor.

2. Don’t you want to watch TV? *No, I* ___________ my book.

3. Would you like some tea? *Well,* ___________ coffee if you have some.

4. Should we go out now? *until it* stops raining.

36.2 Complete these questions. Use *would you rather* . . .

1. Do you want to go out, or *would you rather* stay home?
2. Should we have dinner now, or ___________ later?
3. Would you like a glass of juice, or ___________ water?
4. Do you want to go to the movies, or ___________ TV?
5. Should we call your brother tonight, or ___________ tomorrow morning?

36.3 Complete the sentences with a verb. Sometimes you need to.

1. I’d rather ___________ home tonight. I’d prefer not ___________ out.
2. Should we walk home, or would you rather ___________ a taxi?
3. Do you want me to come with you, or would you prefer ___________ alone?
4. Mary doesn’t want to go to college. She’d rather ___________ a job.
5. “Can I help you with your suitcase?” “No, thank you. I’d rather ___________ it myself.”

36.4 Answer these questions about yourself. Use *I’d rather* . . . *than*.

1. Which would you prefer to be – a bus driver or an airplane pilot? *I’d rather be a bus driver than an airplane pilot.*

2. Which would you prefer to be – a journalist or a school teacher?

3. Where would you prefer to live – in a big city or a small town?

4. Which would you prefer to have – a small house or a big one?

5. Which would you prefer to study – electronics or philosophy?

6. Which would you prefer to watch – a soccer game or a movie?
We use **come/look/go/wait/do/be**, etc. when we tell somebody to do something:
- "**Come** here and **look** at this." **What is it?**
- I don't want to talk to you. **Go** away!
- I'm not ready yet. Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm working.

**also**
- Bye! **Have** a good trip! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** a good flight! / **Have** fun!
  (= I hope you have a good trip, etc.)
- **"Have** some candy." "Oh, thanks."
  (= would you like some candy?)

We use **don't**... when we tell somebody not to do something:
- Be careful! **Don't** fall.
- Please **don't** go. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. **Don't** be late.

You can say **Let's**... when you want people to do things with you. (**let's** = let us)
- It's a nice day. **Let's** go out.
  (= you and I can go out)
- Come on! **Let's** dance.
  (= you and I can dance)
- Are you ready? **Let's** go.
- **Let's** have fish for dinner tonight.

_A:_ Should we go out tonight?
_B:_ No, I'm tired. **Let's** stay home.

The negative is **Let's not**...:
- It's cold. **Let's not** go out. Let's stay home.
- **Let's not** have fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.
- I'm tired of arguing. **Let's not** do it any more.
Exercises

37.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (buy/come, etc.) and some are negative (don’t buy / don’t come, etc.). Use these verbs:

be  buy  come  drink  drop  forget  have  sit  sleep  smile

1. **Come in!**
2. **Don’t drink the water.**
3. **It’s too expensive.**
4. **OK, are you ready?**
5. **Sit on the cat!**
6. **Bye! Have a nice time.**
7. **Don’t worry, I won’t.**
8. **OK. Smile well.**

37.2 Complete the sentences. Use *let’s* with:

- go for a swim  - go to a restaurant  - take the bus  - wait a little  - watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis? No, *let’s go for a swim*
2. Do you want to walk home? No, ____________________________
3. Shall I put a CD on? No, ____________________________
4. Should we have dinner at home? No, ____________________________
5. Would you like to go now? No, ____________________________

37.3 Answer with *No, don’t* . . . or *No, let’s* not . . .

1. Shall I wait for you?
   No, *don’t wait for me.*
2. Should we go home now?
   No, *let’s not go home yet.*
3. Shall we go out?
   ____________________________
4. Do you want me to close the window?
   ____________________________
5. Should I call you tonight?
   ____________________________
6. Do you think we should wait for Andy?
   ____________________________
7. Do you want me to turn on the light?
   ____________________________
8. Should we take a taxi?
   ____________________________
there is  there are

There's a man on the roof.

There's a train at 10:30.

There are seven days in a week.

Singular

there is . . . (there's)
is there . . . ?
there is not . . . (there isn't or there's not)

- There's a big tree in the yard.
- There's nothing on TV tonight.
- A: Do you have any money?
  B: Yes, there's some in my wallet.
- A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, there is./ No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

Plural

there are . . .

are there . . . ?

there are not . . . (there aren't)

- There are some big trees in the yard.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any restaurants near here?
  B: Yes, there are./ No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there on a soccer team?
- There are 11 players on a soccer team.

B

There is and it is

there is

There's a book on the table.
(not It's a book on the table.)

it is

I like this book. It's interesting.
(it = this book)

Compare:

- "What's that noise?" "It's a train." (It = that noise)
  There's a train at 10:30. It's a fast train. (It = the 10:30 train)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (It = this soup)
Exercises

38.1 Springfield is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Springfield with *There is/are* or *There isn’t/aren’t*.

1. a golf course? No
2. any restaurants? Yes (a lot)
3. a hospital? Yes
4. a swimming pool? No
5. any movie theaters? Yes (two)
6. a university? No
7. any big hotels? No

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. There isn’t a golf course.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. There are a lot of restaurants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

38.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use *There is/are* or *There isn’t/aren’t*.

1. There are a few restaurants.
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. ________
6. ________
7. ________

38.3 Write *there is / there isn’t / is there or there are / there aren’t / are there*.

1. Springfield isn’t an old town. __There aren’t__ any old buildings.
2. Look! ____________ a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
3. “Excuse me, ____________ a bank near here?” “Yes, at the end of the block.”
4. ____________ five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters, and me.
5. “How many students ____________ in the class?” “Twenty.”
6. The road is usually very quiet. ____________ much traffic.
7. “__________ a bus from downtown to the airport?” “Yes, every 20 minutes.”
8. “__________ any problems?” “No, everything is OK.”
9. ____________ nowhere to sit down. ____________ any chairs.

38.4 Write sentences with *There are* . . . . Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>five</th>
<th>twenty-six letters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
<td>thirty players</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
<td>days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>the solar system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>states</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the United States</td>
<td>a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a basketball team</td>
<td>the English alphabet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ____________ days in a week.
2. ____________
3. ____________
4. ____________
5. ____________
6. ____________

38.5 Write *there’s / is there or it’s / is it*.

1. “__________ a flight at 10:30.” “__________ a nonstop flight?”
2. I’m not going to buy this shirt. ____________ too expensive.
3. “What’s wrong?” “__________ something in my eye.”
4. ____________ a red car outside your house. ____________ yours?
5. “__________ anything good on TV tonight?” “Yes, ____________ a movie at 8:00.”
6. “What’s that building?” “__________ a school.”
7. “__________ a restaurant in this hotel?” “No, I’m afraid not.”
there was/were  there has/have been  there will be

**A**

**There was / there were (past)**

There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11:15.

**There was a train at 11:00.**

**Compare:**

**there is/are (present)**

- There is a good nature program on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel.
  **There are 1,250 rooms.**
- Are there any phone messages for me this morning?
- I'm hungry, but there isn't anything to eat.

**there was/were (past)**

- There was a good nature program on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel.
  **There were 1,250 rooms.**
- Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?
- I was hungry when I got home, but there wasn't anything to eat.

**B**

**There has been / there have been (present perfect)**

- Look! There's been an accident.
  *(there's been = there has been)*
- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents on it.

**Compare there was (past):**

- There was an accident last night.
  *(not There has been an accident last night.)*

For simple past and present perfect, see Unit 21.

**C**

**There will be**

- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
- I'm going out of town tomorrow. I'm packing my things today because there won't be time tomorrow.
  *(there won't be = there will not be)*

was/were  Unit 10  has/have been  Units 16-17  will  Unit 28  there is/are  Unit 38

there and it  Units 38, 40  some and any  Unit 77
Exercises

39.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with *There was...* or *There were...*.

- an armchair
- a carpet
- some flowers
- a sofa
- some books
- a clock
- three pictures
- a small table

1. **There was a clock** on the wall near the window.
2. **There was** on the floor.
3. **There was** on the wall near the door.
4. **There was** in the middle of the room.
5. **There was** on the table.
6. **There was** on the shelves.
7. **There was** in the corner near the door.
8. opposite the armchair.

39.2 Write *there was / there wasn’t / was there or there were / there weren’t / were there*.

1. I was hungry, but *there wasn’t* anything to eat.
2. *Were there* any phone messages for me yesterday?
3. I opened the envelope, but it was empty. *nothing in it.*
4. “We stayed at a very nice hotel.” “Really? *a swimming pool*?”
5. “Did you buy any cherries?” “No, *any at the store*.”
6. The wallet was empty. *any money in it.*
7. *many people at the meeting*?” “No, very few.”
8. We didn’t visit the museum. *enough time.*
9. I’m sorry I’m late. *a lot of traffic.*
10. Twenty years ago *many tourists here.* Now there are a lot.

39.3 Write *there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be*.

1. **There was** a good program on TV last night.
2. **There is** 24 hours in a day.
3. **There was** a party at work last Friday, but I didn’t go.
4. “Where can I buy a newspaper?” “**There is** a drugstore at the end of the block.”
5. “Why are the police outside the bank?” “**There was** a robbery.”
6. When we got to the theater, **there was** a long line outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, **there is** somebody at the airport to meet you.
8. Ten years ago **there were** 500 children in the school. Now **there are** more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It’s very different now. **There have been** a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don’t think **there will be** any problems.
We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather:

**time**
- What time is **it**?
- It's half past 10.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

**day**
- What day is **it**?
- It's Thursday.
- It's March 16th.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

**distance**
- It's two miles from our house to downtown.
- How far is **it** from New York to Los Angeles?
- It's a long way from here to the airport.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far). In positive sentences, we use a **long way** (it's a long way).

**weather**
- It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday. Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/nice/cloudy/windy/sunny/clear/dry/humid/foggy/dark, etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It** rains a lot in the winter.  
  It's very rainy in the winter.
- There is a lot of rain in the winter.
- **It** was very windy yesterday.
- There was a strong wind yesterday.

**It's nice** to . . . , etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It's</th>
<th>easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible, etc.</th>
<th>to . . .</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's nice</td>
<td>see you again.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's impossible</td>
<td>understand her.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It wasn't easy</td>
<td>find your house.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Don't forget **it**:

- It's raining again. (not Is raining again)
- Is it true that you're moving to Dallas? (not Is true that . . .)
40.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's . . .

1. It's raining.
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. ________
6. ________

40.2 Write *it is* (it's) or *is it*.

1. What time __is it__?
2. We have to go now. __very late.
3. __true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. "What day ______ today? Tuesday?" "No, _______ Wednesday."
5. _______ 10 kilometers from downtown to the airport.
6. _______ OK to call you at the office?
7. "Do you want to walk to the hotel?" "I don't know. How far ________ ?"
8. _______ Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! ________ impossible.

40.3 Write questions with *How far* . . .?

1. (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2. (the hotel / the beach)
3. (New York / Washington)
4. (your house / the airport)

40.4 Write *it or there*.

1. The weather isn't so nice today. __It's__ cloudy.
2. There __was__ a strong wind yesterday.
3. ________ is hot in this room. Open a window.
4. ________ was a nice day yesterday. __was__ warm and sunny.
5. ________ was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6. I was afraid because ________ was very dark.
7. ________ is often cold here, but ________ isn't much rain.
8. ________ is a long way from here to the nearest gas station.

40.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

- easy - dangerous - impossible
- difficult - nice - interesting
- work in this office - visit different places - see you again
- get up early - go out alone - make friends

1. If you go to bed late, __it's difficult to get up early__ in the morning.
2. Hello, Jane. ___________________________. How are you?
3. ___________________________. There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work. ___________________________.
5. I like traveling. ___________________________.
6. Some cities are not safe. ___________________________ at night.
I am, I don’t, etc.

She isn’t tired, but he is.  
\(\text{he is} = \text{he is tired}\)

He likes tea, but she doesn’t.  
\(\text{she doesn’t} = \text{she doesn’t like tea}\)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ("he is tired," "she doesn’t like tea").

You can use these verbs in the same way:

- I haven’t seen the movie, but my sister has.  
  \(\text{has} = \text{my sister has seen the movie}\)

- A: Please help me.  
  B: I’m sorry. I can’t.  
  \(\text{can’t} = \text{I can’t help you}\)

- A: Are you tired?  
  B: I was, but I’m not now.  
  \(\text{not} \ldots \text{but he’s}\)

You cannot use ’m/’s/’ve, etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use am/is/have, etc.:

- She isn’t tired, but he is.  
  \(\text{is} = \text{not . . . but he’s}\)

But you can use isn’t / haven’t / won’t, etc. (negative short forms):

- My sister has seen the movie, but I haven’t.
- “Are you and Jane working tomorrow?” “I am, but Jane isn’t.”

You can use I am / I’m not, etc. after Yes and No:

- “Are you tired?” “Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.”
- “Will Bill be here tomorrow?” “Yes, he will. / No, he won’t.”
- “Is there a bus to the airport?” “Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.”

We use do/does for the simple present (see Units 6–7):

- I don’t like hot weather, but Sue does.  
  \(\text{does} = \text{Sue likes hot weather}\)
- Sue works hard, but I don’t.  
  \(\text{don’t} = \text{I don’t work hard}\)
- “Do you enjoy your work?” “Yes, I do.”

We use did for the simple past (see Unit 12):

- A: Did you and Chris like the movie?  
  B: I did, but Chris didn’t.  
  \(\text{didn’t} = \text{I liked it, but Chris didn’t like it}\)
- “I had a good time.” “I did, too.”  
  \(\text{did, too} = \text{I had a good time, too}\)
- “Did it rain yesterday?” “No, it didn’t.”
Exercises

41.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can, etc.) each time.
1. Kate wasn’t hungry, but we _________.
2. I’m not married, but my brother _________.
3. Bill can’t help you, but I _________.
4. I haven’t read the book, but Tom _________.
5. Karen won’t be here, but Chris _________.
6. You weren’t late, but I _________.

41.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/can’t, etc.).
1. My sister can play the piano, but I _________.
2. Sam is working today, but I _________.
3. I was working, but my friends _________.
4. Mark has been to China, but I _________.
5. I’m ready to go, but Tom _________.
6. I’ve seen the movie, but Kim _________.

41.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.
1. I don’t like hot weather, but Sue _________.
2. Sue likes hot weather, but I _________.
3. My mother wears glasses, but my father _________.
4. You don’t know Paul very well, but I _________.
5. I didn’t enjoy the party, but my friends _________.
6. I don’t watch TV much, but Peter _________.
7. Kate lives in Canada, but her parents _________.
8. You had breakfast this morning, but I _________.

41.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.
1. I didn’t _________.
2. I like _________.
3. I don’t _________.
4. I’m _________.
5. I haven’t _________.

41.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.
1. “Are you tired?” “I _________.
2. Steve is happy today, but he _________.
3. The stores aren’t open yet, but the post office _________.
4. I don’t have a telescope, but I know somebody who _________.
5. I would like to help you, but I’m sorry I _________.
6. I don’t usually drive to work, but I _________.
7. A: Have you ever been to Costa Rica?
   B: No, but Sandra _________. She went there on vacation last year.
9. I’ve been invited to Sam’s wedding, but Kate _________.
10. “Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?” “Yes, I’m sure she _________.
11. “Are you going out tonight?” “I _________. I don’t know for sure.”

41.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I’m not., etc.
1. Are you Brazilian? _________.
2. Do you have a car? _________.
3. Do you feel OK? _________.
4. Is it snowing? _________.
5. Are you hungry? _________.
6. Do you like classical music? _________.
7. Will you be in Boston tomorrow? _________.
8. Have you ever broken your arm? _________.
9. Did you buy anything yesterday? _________.
10. Were you asleep at 3:00 a.m.? _________.

83
You can say you have? / it is? / he can’t?, etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:
- “You’re late.” “I am? I’m sorry.”
- “I was sick last week.” “You were? I didn’t know that.”
- “It’s raining again.” “It is? It was sunny 10 minutes ago.”
- “There’s a letter for you.” “There is? Where is it?”
- “Bill can’t drive.” “He can’t? I didn’t know that.”
- “I’m not hungry.” “You aren’t? I am.”
- “Sue isn’t at work today.” “She isn’t? Is she sick?”

Use do/does for the simple present and did for the simple past:
- “I speak four languages.” “You do? Which ones?”
- “Tim doesn’t eat meat.” “He doesn’t? Does he eat fish?”
- “Nicole got married last week.” “She did? Really?”

Tag questions

You can use have you? / is it? / can’t she?, etc. at the end of a sentence. These “mini questions” are tag questions.

Positive sentence → Negative tag question
- It’s a nice day, isn’t it?
- Sally lives in Portland, doesn’t she?
- You closed the window, didn’t you?
- Those shoes are nice, aren’t they?
- Tom will be here soon, won’t he?
  Yes, it’s perfect.
  Yes, that’s right.
  Yes, I think so.
  Yes, very nice.
  Yes, probably.

Negative sentence → Positive tag question
- That isn’t your car, is it?
- You haven’t met my mother, have you?
- Sally doesn’t go out much, does she?
- You won’t be late, will you?
  No, it’s my mother’s.
  No, I haven’t.
  No, she doesn’t.
  No, I’m never late.
42.1  Answer with *You do? / She doesn’t? / They did?, etc.*

1. I speak four languages.  
2. I work in a bank.  
3. I didn’t go to work yesterday.  
4. Jane doesn’t like me.  
5. You look tired.  
6. Kate called me last night.

- **You do**? Which ones?  
- **I work in a bank, too**.  
- **Were you sick?**  
- **Why not?**  
- **I feel fine.**  
- **What did she say?**

42.2  Answer with *You have? / You haven’t? / She did? / She didn’t?, etc.*

1. I’ve bought a new car.  
2. Tim doesn’t eat meat.  
3. I’ve lost my key.  
4. Sue can’t drive.  
5. I was born in Italy.  
6. I didn’t sleep well last night.  
7. There’s a football game on TV tonight.  
8. I’m not happy.  
9. I saw Paula last week.  
10. Maria works in a factory.  
11. I won’t be here next week.  
12. The clock isn’t working.

- **You have**? What kind is it?  
- **He doesn’t**? Does he eat fish?  
- **When did you have it last?**  
- **She should learn.**  
- **I didn’t know that.**  
- **Was the bed uncomfortable?**  
- **Are you going to watch it?**  
- **Why not?**  
- **How is she?**  
- **What kind of factory?**  
- **Where will you be?**  
- **It was working yesterday.**

42.3  Complete these sentences with a tag question (*isn’t it? / haven’t you?, etc.*).

1. It’s a nice day, **isn’t it?**
2. These flowers are nice, **isn’t it?**
3. Jane was at the party, **isn’t she?**
4. You’ve been to Chile, **isn’t it?**
5. You speak Thai, **isn’t it?**
6. Bill looks tired, **isn’t it?**
7. You’ll help me, **isn’t it?**

- Yes, it’s beautiful.  
- Yes, what kind are they?  
- Yes, but I didn’t speak to her.  
- Yes, many times.  
- Yes, but not very well.  
- Yes, he works very hard.  
- Yes, of course I will.

42.4  Complete these sentences with a tag question, positive (*is it? / do you?, etc.*) or negative (*isn’t it? / don’t you?, etc.*).

1. You haven’t eaten yet, **have you?**  
2. You aren’t tired, **are you?**  
3. Lisa is a very nice person, **isn’t she?**  
4. You can play the piano, **can’t you?**  
5. You don’t know Mike’s sister, **do you?**  
6. Sarah went to college, **didn’t she?**  
7. The movie wasn’t very good, **was it?**  
8. Anna lives near you, **doesn’t he?**  
9. You won’t tell anybody what I said, **will you?**

- No, I’m not hungry.  
- No, I feel fine.  
- Yes, everybody likes her.  
- Yes, but I’m not very good.  
- No, I’ve never met her.  
- Yes, she studied psychology.  
- No, it was terrible.  
- Yes, just a few blocks away.  
- No, of course not.
too/either  so am I / neither do I, etc.

Too and either

We use *too* and *either* at the end of a sentence.

We use *too* after a positive verb:
- A: I'm happy.
  B: *I'm happy, too.*
- A: I liked the movie.
  B: *I liked it, too.*
- Jane is a doctor. Her husband *is* a doctor, *too.*

We use *either* after a negative verb:
- A: I'm not happy.
  B: *I'm not happy, either.*
- A: I can't cook.
  B: *I can't, either.*
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't *read* newspapers, *either.*

so am I / neither do I, etc.

**so am I** = I am, too

**so have I** = I have, too (etc.):
- A: I'm working.
  B: *So am I.* (= I'm working, too)
- A: I was late for work today.
  B: *So was Sam.* (= Sam was late, too)
- A: I work in a bank.
  B: *So do I.*
- A: We went to the movies last night.
  B: You did? *So did we.*
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.
  B: *So would I.*

**neither am I** = I'm not, either

**neither can I** = I can't, either (etc.):
- A: I haven't been to China.
  B: *Neither have I.* (= I haven't, either)
- A: Kate can't cook.
  B: *Neither can Tom.* (= Tom can't, either)
- A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  B: *Neither will I.*
- A: I never go to the movies.
  B: *Neither do I.*

Remember: So *am I* (not So I am), Neither *have I* (not Neither I have).
43.1 Write **too** or **either**.
1. I'm happy.
2. I'm not hungry.
3. I'm going out.
4. It rained on Saturday.
5. Jenny can't drive a car.
6. I don't like to go shopping.
7. Linda's mother is a teacher.

43.2 Answer with **So . . . I** (So am I / So do I / So can I, etc.).
1. I went to bed late last night.
2. I'm thirsty.
3. I've already read this book.
4. I need a vacation.
5. I'll be late tomorrow.
6. I was very tired this morning.
7. I can't go to the party.
8. I didn't call Alex last night.
9. I haven't eaten lunch yet.
10. I'm not going out tonight.
11. I don't know what to do.

43.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use **So . . . I** or **Neither . . . I**. Look at these examples carefully:

**I'm tired today.**

**You can answer:**  
So am I  
OR  
I'm not.

**I don't work hard.**

**You can answer:**  
Neither do I  
OR  
I do.

1. I'm studying English.
2. I can ride a bicycle.
3. I'm not American.
4. I like to cook.
5. I don't like cold weather.
6. I slept well last night.
7. I've never been to India.
8. I don't use my phone much.
9. I'm going out tomorrow night.
10. I wasn't sick last week.
11. I didn't watch TV last night.
12. I go to the movies a lot.
Isn't, haven't, don't, etc. (negatives)

We use not (n't) in negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>am not ('m not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>is not (isn't or 's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not (aren't or 're not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has not (hasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will not (won't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>cannot (can't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>could not (couldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>should not (shouldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>would not (wouldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>must not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Don't / doesn't / didn't

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple present negative</th>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>do not (don't)</th>
<th>work/live/go, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I want to go out.</td>
<td>I don't want to go out.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They work hard.</td>
<td>They don't work hard.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liz plays the guitar.</td>
<td>Liz doesn't play the guitar.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My father likes his job.</td>
<td>My father doesn't like his job.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got up early this morning.</td>
<td>I didn't get up early this morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They worked hard yesterday.</td>
<td>They didn't work hard yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We played tennis.</td>
<td>We didn't play tennis.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diane had dinner with us.</td>
<td>Diane didn't have dinner with us.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Don't...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Look!</td>
<td>Don't look!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wait for me.</td>
<td>Don't wait for me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes do is the main verb (don't do / doesn't do / didn't do):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sue does a lot on weekends.</td>
<td>Sue doesn't do much on weekends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I did what you said.</td>
<td>I didn't do what you said.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
44.1 Make these sentences negative.
1. He's gone out. **He hasn't gone out.**
2. They're married. __________________
3. I've had dinner. __________________
4. It's cold today. __________________
5. We'll be late. __________________
6. You should go. __________________

44.2 Make these sentences negative. Use don't/doesn't/didn't.
1. She saw me. **She didn't see me**
2. I like cheese. __________________
3. They understood. __________________
4. We'll be late. __________________
5. You should go. __________________

44.3 Make these sentences negative.
1. She can swim. **She can't swim.**
2. They've arrived. __________________
3. We went to the station from here. It ________ very far.
4. He speaks Japanese. __________________
5. We were angry. __________________
6. I did the dishes. __________________

44.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't, etc.).
1. They aren't rich. They don't have much money.
2. “Would you like something to eat?” “No, thank you. I __________ hungry.”
3. I __________ find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4. Steve __________ use e-mail much. He'd rather talk on the phone.
5. We can walk to the station from here. It ________ very far.
7. Be careful! __________ fall!
8. We went to the movies last night. I ________ like the movie very much.
9. I've been to Japan many times, but I ________ been to South Korea.
10. Julia ________ be here tomorrow. She'll be out of town.
11. “Who broke that window?” “Not me. I ________ do it.”
12. We didn't see what happened. We ________ looking at the time.
13. Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she ________ worn it yet.

44.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers “Yes” or “No.” Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You</th>
<th>Gary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td>No. 1. <strong>He isn't married.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live in Los Angeles?</td>
<td>Yes. 2. <strong>He lives in Los Angeles.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were you born in Los Angeles?</td>
<td>No. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like Los Angeles?</td>
<td>No. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you like to live someplace else?</td>
<td>Yes. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you drive?</td>
<td>Yes. 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you traveled abroad?</td>
<td>No. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you read the newspaper?</td>
<td>No. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in politics?</td>
<td>No. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you usually watch TV at night?</td>
<td>Yes. 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you watch TV last night?</td>
<td>No. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you go out last night?</td>
<td>Yes. 12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
is it . . . ? have you . . . ? do they . . . ?, etc. (questions 1)

Positive  you  are  You are eating.

Question  are  you  Are you eating?  What are you eating?

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have, etc.) is before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive subject + verb</th>
<th>Question verb + subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am late.</td>
<td>Am I late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That seat is free.</td>
<td>Is that seat free?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was angry.</td>
<td>Why was she angry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David has gone.</td>
<td>Where has David gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have been to Japan.</td>
<td>Have you been to Japan?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will be here soon.</td>
<td>When will they be here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paula can swim.</td>
<td>Can Paula swim?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where has David gone? (not Where has gone David?)
- Are those people waiting for something? (not Are waiting . . . ?)
- When was the telephone invented? (not When was invented . . . ?)

do . . . ? / does . . . ? / did . . . ?

Simple present questions
- do I/we/you/they work/live/go, etc. . . . ?
- does he/she/it

Simple past questions
- did I/they/he/she, etc.

Positive Question
- They work hard.  Do they work hard?
- You watch television.  How often do you watch television?
- Chris has a car.  Does Chris have a car?
- She gets up early.  What time does she get up?
- They worked hard.  Did they work hard?
- You had dinner.  What did you have for dinner?
- She got up early.  What time did she get up?

Sometimes do is the main verb (do you do / did he do, etc.):

- What do you usually do on weekends?
- “What does your brother do?”  “He works in a bank.”
- “I broke my finger last week.”  “How did you do that?” (not How did you that?)

Why isn’t . . . ? / Why don’t . . . ?, etc. (Why + negative):

- Where’s John?  Why isn’t he here? (not Why he isn’t here?)
- Why can’t Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (not Why Paula can’t . . . ?)
- Why didn’t you call me last night?
Exercises

45.1 Write questions.
1. I can swim. (and you?)
2. I work hard. (and Jack?)
3. I was late this morning. (and you?)
4. I've seen that movie. (and Kate?)
5. I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?)
6. I'm going out tonight. (and Paul?)
7. I like my job. (and you?)
8. I live near here. (and Nicole?)
9. I enjoyed the movie. (and you?)
10. I had a good vacation. (and you?)

45.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You: Do you have a car?

Yes, I do.
Yes, almost every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

45.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2. (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3. (the children / what / are / doing?) What are the children doing?
4. (made / is / how / cheese?) How is cheese made?
5. (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) Is your sister coming to the party?
6. (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) Why don't you tell the truth?
7. (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) Have your guests arrived yet?
8. (leave / what time / your plane / does?) What time does your plane leave?
9. (to work / Jenny / why / go / didn't?) Why didn't Jenny go to work?
10. (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) Was your car damaged in the accident?

45.4 Complete the questions.

1. I want to go out. Where do you want to go?
2. Kate and Paul aren't going to the party. Why aren't they going?
3. I'm reading. What am I doing?
4. Sue went to bed early. What time did Sue go to bed?
5. My parents are going on vacation. When are they going on vacation?
6. I saw Tom a few days ago. Where did you see Tom?
7. I can't come to the party. Why can't you come to the party?
8. Tina has moved. Where has Tina moved?
9. I need some money. How much money do I need?
10. Angela doesn't like me. Why doesn't Angela like me?
11. It rains sometimes. How often does it rain?
12. I did the shopping. When did you do the shopping?
Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)

Sylvia saw Paul.
Who saw Paul?
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)
Who did Sylvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

In these questions, who/what is the subject:
- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it - who?)
  (not Who does live?)
- What happened? (= something happened - what?)
  (not What did happen?)
- What's happening? (What's = What is)
- Who's got my keys? (Who's = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:
- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody - who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something - what?)
- Who are you calling?
- What was Sylvia wearing?

Compare:
  What does George like? – Oranges.

Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas, etc. (something):
- Who is your favorite singer?
- What is your favorite song?
Exercises

46.1 Make questions with **who** or **what**. In these questions, **who**/**what** is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
   - **Who** broke the window?
2. Something fell off the shelf.
   - **Who** fell off the shelf?
3. Somebody wants to see you.
   - **Who** wants to see you?
4. Somebody took my umbrella.
   - **Who** took my umbrella?
5. Something made me sick.
   - **Who** made me sick?
6. Somebody is coming.
   - **Who** is coming?

46.2 Make questions with **who** or **what** (subject or object).

1. I bought something.
   - **What** did you buy?
2. Somebody lives in this house.
   - **Who** lives in this house?
3. I called somebody.
   - **Who** did you call?
4. Something happened last night.
   - **What** happened last night?
5. Somebody knows the answer.
   - **Who** knows the answer?
6. Somebody did the dishes.
   - **Who** did the dishes?
7. Jane did something.
   - **Who** did something?
8. Something woke me up.
   - **Who** woke me up?
9. Somebody saw the accident.
   - **Who** saw the accident?
10. I saw somebody.
    - **Who** did you see?
11. Somebody has my pen.
    - **Who** has my pen?
12. This word means something.
    - **What** does this word mean?

46.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1. I lost XXXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me.
   - **Who** found it?
2. XXXXX called me last night. She wanted XXXXX.
   - **Who** called you last night?
3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXXX. He said XXXXX.
   - **Who** did you ask for advice?
4. I hear that XXXXX got married last week. XXXXX told me.
   - **Who** got married last week?
5. I met XXXXX on my way home tonight. She told me XXXXX.
   - **Who** did you meet?
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXXX won. After the game, we XXXXX.
   - **Who** won?
7. It was my birthday last week and I got some presents. XXXXX gave me a book, and Catherine gave me XXXXX.
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning Who . . . ? / What . . . ? / Where . . . ? / Which . . . ?, prepositions (to/from/with, etc.) usually go at the end:

- "Where are you from?" "I'm from Thailand."
- "Jack was afraid." "What was he afraid of?"
- "Who do these books belong to?" "They're mine."
- "Tom's father is in the hospital." "Which hospital is he in?"
- "Kate is going on vacation." "Who with?" / "Who is she going with?"
- "Can we talk?" "Sure. What do you want to talk about?"

What's it like? / What are they like?, etc.

What's it like? = What is it like?
What's it like? = tell me something about it - is it good or bad, big or small, old or new, etc.?

When we say "What is it like?", like is a preposition. It is not the verb like (Do you like your new house?).

- A: There's a new restaurant near my house.
  B: What's it like? Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.

- A: What's your new teacher like?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.

- A: I met Nicole's parents yesterday.
  B: You did? What are they like?
  A: They're very nice.

- A: Did you have a good vacation? What was the weather like?
  B: It was great. It was sunny every day.
Exercises

47.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. The letter is from XXXXX.
2. I'm looking for a XXXXX.
3. I went to the movies with XXXXX.
4. The movie was about XXXXX.
5. I gave the money to XXXXX.
6. The book was written by XXXXX.

Who is the letter from?
What ______ you ________

47.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

- go
- listen
- look
- talk
- talk
- wait

1. Who is she talking to?
2. What ______
3. Which restaurant
4. What ______
5. What ______
6. Which bus ______

47.3 Write questions with Which . . . ?

1. Tom's father is in the hospital.
2. We stayed at a hotel.
3. Jack plays for a football team.
4. I went to school in this town.

Which hospital is he in?

47.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with What is/are . . . like?

1. (the roads) What are the roads like?
2. (the food)
3. (the people)
4. (the weather)

47.5 Ask questions with What was/were . . . like?

1. Your friend has just come back from a trip. Ask about the weather. What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the movies. Ask about the movie.
3. Your friend has just finished a computer course. Ask about the classes.
4. Your friend has just come back from a business trip. Ask about the hotel.
What . . . ? Which . . . ? How . . . ?

(questions 4)

| What + noun (What color . . . ? / What kind . . . ?, etc.) |
| What color is your car?  | What color are your eyes? |
| What size is this shirt? | What nationality is she? |
| What time is it?        | What day is it today? |
| What kind of job do you want? (or What type of job . . . ? / What sort of job . . . ?) |

What without a noun:
- What's your favorite color?
- What do you want to do tonight?

Which + noun (things or people):
- Which train did you catch – the 9:50 or the 10:30?
- Which doctor did you see – Doctor Lopez, Doctor Gray, or Doctor Hill?

We use which without a noun for things, not people:
- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use who for people (without a noun):
- Who is taller – Joe or Gary? (not Which is taller?)

What or which?

We use which when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3, or 4):
- We can go this way or that way. Which way should we go?
- There are four umbrellas here. Which is yours?

What is more general:
- What's the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- What kind of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:
- What color are his eyes? (not Which color?)
- Which color do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon, or the Nile?

How . . . ?

- "How was the party last night?" “It was great.”
- “How do you get to work?” “By bus.”

You can use how + adjective/adverb (how tall / how old / how often, etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;How&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;How&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tall</td>
<td>are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>is the house?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>is your mother?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>is it from here to the airport?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>do you use your car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>have they been married?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>was the taxi?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

48.1 Write questions with What . . . ?
1. This shirt is nice. (size?) What size is it?
2. I want a job. (kind?) What kind of job do you want?
3. I have a new sweater. (color?) What color is it?
4. I got up early this morning. (time?) What time did you get up?
5. I like music. (type?) What type of music do you like?
6. I want to buy a car. (kind?) What kind of car do you want?

48.2 Complete the questions. Use Which . . . ?
1. Which way should we go? Kendall Sq.
2. Which theater goes downtown? Theater 1
3. Which way should we go? Left or right?
4. Which camera do you prefer? You can have tea or coffee.
5. “Which day is it today?” “Friday.”
6. Which desk is yours?
7. Which is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. Which is older, Liz or Steve?
9. Which kind of camera do you have?
10. A: I’ve got three cameras. B: Which camera do you use most?

48.3 Write What/Which/Who.
1. What is that man’s name? 6. This is a nice office. ______ desk is yours?
2. Which way should we go? 7. ______ is more expensive, meat or fish?
Left or right? 8. ______ is older, Liz or Steve?
3. You can have tea or coffee. ______ do you prefer? 9. ______ is your favorite sport?
4. ______ day is it today?” “Friday.” 10. ______ camera do you use most?
5. ______ is your favorite sport?

48.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long, etc.).
1. How high is Mount Everest? Over 29,000 feet.
2. ______ is it to the station? Almost two miles.
3. ______ is Helen? She’s 26.
4. ______ do the buses run? Every 10 minutes.
5. ______ is the water in the pool? Seven feet.
6. ______ have you lived here? Almost three years.

48.5 Write questions with How . . . ?
1. Are you five feet nine? Five feet 10? Five feet 11? How tall are you?
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?
3. Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?
4. Did you spend $20? $30? $50?
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
6. Is it 2,000 miles from New York to Los Angeles? 2,500? 3,000?
How long does it take . . . ?

How long does it take to get from . . . to . . . ?

- How long does it take to get from New York to Washington, D.C., by plane?
  - It takes one hour.

- How long does it take to get from Los Angeles to New York by train?
  - It takes several days to get from Los Angeles to New York by train.

- How long does it take to get from your house to the airport by car?
  - It takes ten minutes to get from my house to the airport by car.

How long does it take to do something?

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- "I came by train." "You did? How long did it take (to get here)?"
- How long will it take to get from here to the hotel?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn't take long to make an omelet.
- It won't take long to fix the computer.

How long does it take you to do something?

- I started reading the book on Monday.
  - It took me three days to read it.

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It takes Tom 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took us an hour to do the shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take me an hour to cook dinner.
49.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with *How long ... ?*

1. How long does it take to get from Rio de Janeiro to Lima by plane?
2. ____________________________
3. ____________________________
4. ____________________________

49.2 *How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.*

1. fly from your city/country to Los Angeles
   *It takes about 11 hours to fly from Seoul to Los Angeles.*
2. fly from your city/country to Australia
3. become a doctor in your country
4. walk from your home to the nearest supermarket
5. get from your house to the nearest airport

49.3 Write questions with *How long did it take ... ?*

1. (Jane found a job.)
   *How long did it take her to find a job?*
   ____________________________
2. (I walked to the station.)
   ______________ you ____________________________
3. (Tom painted the bathroom.)
   ____________________________________________________
4. (I learned to ski.)
   ____________________________________________________
5. (They repaired the computer.)
   ____________________________________________________

49.4 Read the situations and write sentences with *It took ... .*

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
   *It took me three days to read the book.*
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10:00, and we got home at 10:20.
3. I learned to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
4. Mark drove to Houston yesterday. He left home at 7:00 and got to Houston at 10:00.
5. Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
6. *Write a sentence about yourself.*
Do you know where . . .?
I don't know what . . ., etc.

Compare:

Who are those people?
How old is Nicole?
What time is it?
Where can I go?
How much is this camera?
When are you leaving town?
Where have they gone?
What was Jenny wearing?

Do you know
Can you tell me
I know
I don't know
I don't remember

Who those people are
how old Nicole is
what time it is
where I can go
how much this camera is
when you're leaving town
where they have gone
what Jenny was wearing

Questions with do/does/did (simple present and simple past)

Where does he live?

Do you know where he lives? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How do airplanes fly?
What does Jane want?
Why did she go home?
Where did I put the key?

Do you know
I don't know
I don't remember
I know

how airplanes fly
what Jane wants
why she went home
where I put the key

Questions beginning Is . . .? / Do . . .? / Can . . .?, etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

Do you know
I don't know

if
whether

Jack is at home
they've got a car
Brian can swim
they live near here
anybody saw you

You can use if or whether in these sentences:

- Do you know if they've got a car? or Do you know whether they've got a car?
- I don't know if anybody saw me. or I don't know whether anybody saw me.
Exercises

50.1 Answer these questions with *I don't know where/when/why . . . , etc.*

1. Have your friends gone home? *(where)* I don't know where they've gone.
2. Is Sue in her office? *(where)* I don't know .
3. Is the building very old? *(how old)* .
4. Will Paul be here soon? *(when)* .
5. Was he angry because I was late? *(why)* .
6. Has Donna lived here a long time? *(how long)* .

50.2 Complete the sentences.

1. *(How do airplanes fly?)* Do you know *how airplanes fly*?
2. *(Where does Susan work?)* I don't know .
3. *(What did Peter say?)* Do you remember ?
4. *(Why did he go home early?)* I don't know .
5. *(What time does the meeting begin?)* Do you know ?
6. *(How did the accident happen?)* I don't remember .

50.3 Which is right?

1. Do you know what time *is it/it is?* *(it is right)*
2. Why are you / you are leaving?
3. I don't know where are they / they are going.
4. Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5. Where do you want / you want to go for vacation?
6. Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
7. I don't know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

50.4 Write questions with *Do you know if . . . ?*

1. *(Do they have a car?)* Do you know if they have a car?
2. *(Are they married?)* Do you know .
3. *(Does Sue know Bill?)* .
4. *(Will Gary be here tomorrow?)* .
5. *(Did he pass his exam?)* .

50.5 Write questions beginning *Do you know . . . ?*

1. *(What does Laura want?)* Do you know what Laura wants?
2. *(Where is Paula?)* .
3. *(Is she working today?)* .
4. *(What time does she start work?)* .
5. *(Are the banks open tomorrow?)* .
6. *(Where do Sarah and Tim live?)* .
7. *(Did they go to Jane's party?)* .

50.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Do you know why *the bus was late* ?
2. Do you know what time .
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where .
4. I don't know what .
5. Do you know if .
6. Do you know how much .
Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diane</td>
<td>I'm enjoying my job.</td>
<td>am → was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My father isn't very happy.</td>
<td>is → was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td>We're going to buy a house.</td>
<td>are → were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tim</td>
<td>I have to leave early.</td>
<td>have → had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>I can't find a job.</td>
<td>can → could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate</td>
<td>I'll call you.</td>
<td>will → would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steve</td>
<td>I don't like my job.</td>
<td>do → did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rachel</td>
<td>My son doesn't like school.</td>
<td>does → did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mike</td>
<td>You look tired.</td>
<td>look → looked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I feel fine.</td>
<td>feel etc. → felt etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

- Diane said that she was enjoying her new job.
- She said that her father wasn't very happy.
- Sarah and Tim said that they were going to buy a house.
- Peter said that he had to leave early.
- He said that his sister had gone to Australia.
- Kate said that she couldn't find a job.
- Steve said that he would call me.
- Rachel said that she didn't like her job.
- She said that her son didn't like school.
- Mike said that I looked tired.
- I said that I felt fine.

### B

**say and tell**

**say (→ said)**
- He said that he was tired.
  
  *(not He said me)*
- What did she say to you?  
  *(not say you)*

We say he said to me, I said to Ann, etc. *but not “he said me,” “I said Ann.”*

**tell (→ told)**
- He told me that he was tired.
  
  *(not He told that)*
- What did she tell you?  
  *(not tell to you)*

We say he told me, I told Ann, etc. *but not “he told to me,” “I told to Ann.”*
51.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that) . . . .

1. I've lost my watch.
   He said he had lost his watch.

2. I'm very busy.

3. I can't go to the party.

4. I have to go out.

5. I'm learning Russian.

6. I don't feel very well.

7. We'll be home late.

8. I've just gotten back from vacation.

9. I'm going to buy a new computer.

10. We don't have a key.

51.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1. I'm enjoying my new job.
   Diane

2. I'm not hungry.
   Emily

3. I need it.
   Mike

4. I don't want to go.
   Hannah

5. You can have it.
   Sharon

6. I'll send you a postcard.
   Mark

7. He's gone home.
   Linda

8. I want to watch TV.
   David

9. I'm going to the movies.
   Mary

1. I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.

2. Emily didn't want anything to eat. She said ____________________

3. I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said ____________________

4. Hannah was invited to the party, but she said ____________________

5. Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said ____________________

6. Mark just left on vacation. He said ____________________

7. I was looking for Robert. Linda said ____________________

8. "Why did David stay at home?" "He said ____________________"

9. "Has Mary gone out?" "I think so. She said ____________________"

51.3 Write say/said or tell/told.

1. He ________ he was tired.

2. What did she ________ you?

3. Anna ________ she didn't like Peter.

4. Jack ________ that you were sick.

5. Please don't ________ Dan what happened.

6. Did Lucy ________ she would be late?

7. The woman ________ she was a reporter.

8. The woman ________ us she was a reporter.

9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't ________ them anything.

10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't ________ anything.
work/workng  go/going  do/doing

Work/go/be, etc. (base form)

We use the base form with will/can/must, etc.:

- will
  - Anna will be here soon.  → Units 28–29
- shall
  - Shall I open the window?  → Unit 30
- might
  - I might call you later.
- may
  - May I sit here?
- can
  - I can’t meet you tomorrow.
- could
  - Could you pass the salt, please?  → Unit 31
- must
  - You must be tired.  → Unit 32
- should
  - You shouldn’t work so hard.  → Unit 33
- would
  - Would you like some coffee?  → Unit 35

We use the base form with do/does/did:

- do/does (simple present)
  - Do you work?  → Units 6–7
  - They don’t work very hard.
  - Helen doesn’t know many people.
  - How much does it cost?
- did (simple past)
  - What time did the train leave?  → Unit 12
  - We didn’t sleep well.

to work / to go / to be, etc. (infinitive)

(I’m) going to . . .

- I’m going to play tennis tomorrow.  → Unit 27
- What are you going to do?

(l) have to . . .

- I have to go now.  → Unit 34
- Everybody has to eat.

(I) want to . . .

- Do you want to go out?  → Unit 53
- They don’t want to come with us.

(I) would like to . . .

- I’d like to talk to you.  → Unit 35
- Would you like to go out?

(l) used to . . .

- Dave used to work in a factory.  → Unit 15

working/going/playing, etc.

- am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)
  - Please be quiet. I’m working.  → Units 3–4, 8, 26
  - Tom isn’t working today.
  - What time are you going out?

- was/were + -ing (past continuous)
  - It was raining, so we didn’t go out.  → Units 13–14
  - What were you doing when the phone rang?
Exercises

52.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... call Paul or ... to call Paul.

1. I'll ... call Paul ... .
2. I'm going ... to call Paul ... .
3. Can you ... call Paul? ...
4. Shall I ... call Paul? ...
5. I'd like ... call Paul. ...
6. Do you have ... Paul? ...
7. You should ... Paul.
8. I want ... Paul.
9. I might ... Paul.
10. Could you ... Paul? ...

52.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the base form (work/go, etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going, etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do/doing</th>
<th>eat/eating</th>
<th>fly/flying</th>
<th>get/getting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go/going</td>
<td>listen/listening</td>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait/waiting</td>
<td>watch/watching</td>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Please be quiet. I'm ... working ... .
2. I feel tired today. I didn't ... sleep ... very well last night.
3. What time do you usually ... sleep ... up in the morning?
4. “Where are you ... sleeping ... ?” “To the bank.”
5. Did you ... watch ... television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It's ... flying ... very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I'm not ... listening ... to it.
8. They didn't ... eat ... anything because they weren't hungry.
9. My friends were ... staying ... for me when I arrived.
10. “Does Susan always ... wear ... glasses?” “No, only for reading.”
11. “What are you ... doing ... tonight?” “I'm ... going ... home.”

52.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

- the base form (work/go, etc.)
- the infinitive (to work/to go, etc.)
- -ing (working/going, etc.)

1. Should I ... open ... the window? (open)
2. It's late. I have ... to go ... now. (go)
3. Amanda isn't ... working ... this week. She's on vacation. (work)
4. I'm tired. I don't want ... to go ... out. (go)
5. It might ... rain ... , so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have ... to leave ... tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I'm sorry I can't ... to help ... you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He's ... studying ... physics. (study)
9. Would you like ... to go ... on a trip around the world? (go)
10. When you saw Maria, what was she ... wearing ... ? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going ... to stay ... ? (stay)
12. “Where's Gary?” “He's ... taking ... a bath.” (take)
13. I used ... to have ... a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
14. He spoke very quietly. I couldn't ... to hear ... him. (hear)
15. You don't look well. I don’t think you should ... to go ... to work today. (go)
16. I don't know what he said. I wasn't ... to listen ... to him. (listen)
17. I'm sorry I'm late. I had ... to make ... a phone call. (make)
18. I want ... to be ... a doctor. (be) Medical students must ... take ... courses in biology and chemistry. (take)
19. May I please ... to use ... your phone? (use)
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

- want
- plan
- decide
- try
- hope
- expect
- offer
- forget
- need
- promise
- refuse
- learn

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be, etc.)

What do you want to do tonight?
It’s not very late. We don’t need to go home yet.
Tina has decided to sell her car.
You forgot to turn off the light when you went out.
My brother is learning to drive.
I tried to read my book, but I was too tired.

verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

- enjoy
- stop
- suggest
- mind
- finish
- + -ing (doing/working/being, etc.)

I enjoy dancing. (not enjoy to dance)
I don’t mind getting up early.
Has it stopped raining?
Sonia suggested going to the movies.

verbs + -ing or to ...

- like
- love
- start
- continue
- prefer
- hate
- begin
- + -ing (doing, etc.) or to ... (to do, etc.)

Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
I prefer traveling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
Anna loves dancing. or Anna loves to dance.
I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
It started raining. or It started to rain.

would like to ... , etc.

- would like
- would love
- would prefer
- would hate
- + to ... (to do / to work / to be, etc.)

Julia would like to meet you.
I’d love to go to Australia. (I’d = I would)
“Would you like to sit down?” “No, I’d prefer to stand, thank you.”
I like this city very much. I wouldn’t like to move.
I’d hate to lose my cell phone.
**53.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.**

1. I enjoy **dancing**. (dance)
2. What do you want **to do** tonight? (do)
3. Good-bye! I hope **to see** you again soon. (see)
4. I learned **to dance** when I was five years old. (swim)
5. Have you finished **to clean** the kitchen? (clean)
6. Where's Anna? I need **to ask** her something. (ask)
7. Do you enjoy **to visit** other countries? (visit)
8. The weather was nice, so I suggested **to go** for a walk by the river. (go)
9. Where's Bill? He promised **to be** here on time. (be)
10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind **to wait**. (wait)
11. What have you decided **to do**? (do)
12. Gary was very angry and refused **to speak** to me. (speak)
13. I'm tired. I want **to go** to bed. (go)
14. I was very upset and started **to cry**. (cry)
15. I'm trying **to work**. (work) Please stop **to talk**. (talk)

**53.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use these verbs:**

- go  - go  help  lose  rain  read  see  send  wait  watch

1. "Have you ever been to Australia?" "No, but I'd love **to go**."
2. Jane had a lot to do, so I offered **to go** her.
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect **to see** you.
4. Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys **to read**.
5. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate **to lose** it.
6. Don't forget **to send** us a postcard when you're on vacation.
7. I'm not going out until it stops **to rain**
8. What should we do this afternoon? Would you like **to go** to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evening, I like **to watch** television.
10. "Do you want to go now?" "No, I'd prefer **to wait** a few minutes."

**53.3 Complete the answers to the questions.**

1. Do you usually get up early? **Yes, I like to get up early**.
2. Do you ever go to museums? **Yes, I love to go to museums**.
3. Would you like to go to a museum now? **No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer to go to a restaurant.**
4. Do you write e-mails often? **No, but I'd love to write e-mails.**
5. Have you ever been to Rome? **No, but I'd love to go to Rome.**
6. Do you ever travel by train? **Yes, I enjoy to travel by train.**
7. Do you want to walk home or take a taxi? **I don't mind to take a taxi, but a taxi would be quicker.**

**53.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.**

1. I enjoy **to dance**.
2. I don't like **to swim**.
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like **to go** to the beach.
4. When I'm on vacation, I like **to work**.
5. I don't mind **to wait**,
6. I wouldn't like **to go**.
I want you to

The woman wants to leave. The man doesn’t want the woman to leave. He wants her to stay.
We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>to do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I want you to be happy. (not I want that you are happy)
- They didn’t want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:
- Would you like me to lend you some money?

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to . . .) with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>to . . .</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>asked to lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>told to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>told to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>I didn’t</td>
<td>advised to do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>We</td>
<td>persuaded to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>am teaching to swim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I told you to . . . / I told you not to . . .

→ Jane told me to wait for her. → Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:
- He’s very funny. He makes me laugh. (not makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn’t working. (not let me to use)

You can say Let’s . . . (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:
- Come on! Let’s dance.
- “Do you want to go out tonight?” “No, I’m tired. Let’s stay home.”
Exercises

54.1 Write sentences beginning *I want you...* / *I don't want you...* / *Do you want me...?*

1. (you have to come with me) ___ I want you to come with me. ___
2. (listen carefully) I want ___
3. (please don't be angry) I don't ___
4. (should I wait for you?) Do you ___
5. (don't call me tonight) ___
6. (you should meet Sarah) ___

54.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. Come on! Let's go to the movies! It's a good movie.
   Dan
   Um...er...OK.
2. Where's the station?
   Brian
   You should go to the doctor.
3. I'm sick.
   Linda
   You should go to the doctor.
4. Can you help me?
   Linda
   Of course.
5. I'm busy now. Come back in 10 minutes.
   Tom
   Paul
6. Can I use your phone?
   Sue
   Yes, my mother taught me.
7. Don't call before 8:00.
   Sue
   Of course.
8. Do you play the piano?
   Sue
   Yes, my mother taught me.

1. Dan persuaded ___me to go to the movies;___
2. I wanted to get to the station. A woman told ___
3. Brian was sick. I advised ___
4. Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked ___
5. I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told ___
6. I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let ___
7. Sue is going to call me later. I told ___
8. Ann's mother taught ___

54.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes *to* is necessary (*to go / to wait, etc.*); sometimes *to* is not necessary (*go/wait, etc.*).

- arrive
- borrow
- get
- go
- leave
- make
- repeat
- tell
- think
- wait

1. Please stay here. I don't want you ___to leave___ yet.
2. I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her ___to repeat___ it.
3. “Should we begin?” “No, let's ___to wait___ a few minutes.”
4. Are they already here? I expected them ___to arrive___ much later.
5. Kevin's parents didn't want him ___to be married___.
6. I want to stay here. You can't make me ___to stay___ with you.
7. “Is that your bicycle?” “No, it's John's. He let me ___to use___ it.”
8. Rachel can't come to the party. She told me ___to think___ you.
9. Would you like something to drink? Would you like me ___to make___ some coffee?
10. “Kate doesn't like me.” “What makes you ___to tell___ that?”
Paula wanted some fruit, so she went to the store.
Why did she go to the store? **To get** some fruit.
She went to the store **to get** some fruit.

to . . . (to get / to see, etc.) tells us why a person does something:
- "Why are you going out?" "To get some bread."
- Amy went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I’d like to go to Mexico to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something):
- We need some money to buy food.
- I don’t have time to watch television.

to . . . and for . . .

**to + verb**
(to get / to see, etc.)
- I went to the store to get some fruit. (not for get)
- They’re going to Brazil to see their friends.
- We need some money to buy food.

**for + noun**
(for food / for a newspaper, etc.)
- I went to the store for some fruit.
- They’re going to Brazil for a vacation.
- We need some money for food.

wait for . . . :
- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

wait to (do something):
- I’m waiting to talk to the manager.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to . . . :
- I can’t leave yet. I’m waiting for John to call.
- Are you waiting for the mail to come?
55.1 Write sentences beginning *I went to* . Choose from the boxes.

- a coffee shop  - the drugstore  - the post office  +  - buy some food  - get some medicine  - the supermarket  - get some stamps  - meet a friend

1. I went to the post office to get some stamps.
2. I went _____________________________
3. _____________________________
4. _____________________________

55.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- to get some fresh air  - to open this door  - to read the newspaper
- to see who it was  - to wake him up  - to watch the news

1. I turned on the television ____________________________.
2. Alice sat down in an armchair ____________________________.
3. Do I need a key ____________________________?
4. I went for a walk by the river ____________________________.
5. I knocked on the door of David's room ____________________________.
6. The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window ____________________________.

55.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use *to* .

1. I went to the store _________________.
2. I'm very busy. I don't have time ____________________________.
3. I called Ann ____________________________.
4. I'm going out ____________________________.
5. I borrowed some money ____________________________.

55.4 Write *to* or *for* .

1. I went to the store to get some bread.
2. We went to a restaurant _______ have dinner.
3. Robert wants to go to college _______ study economics.
4. I'm going to Boston _______ an interview next week.
5. I'm going to Toronto _______ visit some friends of mine.
6. Do you have time _______ a cup of coffee?
7. I got up late this morning. I didn't have time _______ comb my hair.
8. Everybody needs money _______ live.
9. We didn't have any money _______ a taxi, so we walked home.
10. The office is very small. There's only enough room _______ a desk and chair.
11. A: Excuse me, are you waiting _______ use the phone?
   B: No, I'm waiting _______ somebody.

55.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

- John / call it / to arrive you / tell me the movie / begin

1. I can't go out yet. I'm waiting _______ for John to call
2. I sat down in the movie theater and waited ____________________________.
3. We called an ambulance and waited ____________________________.
4. “Do you know what to do?” “No, I'm waiting ____________________________.”
**UNIT 56**

### go to . . .
- **go to** (go to work / go to San Francisco / go to a concert, etc.)
  - What time do you usually **go to work**?
  - I’m **going to China** next week.
  - Jean didn’t want to **go to the concert**.
  - What time did you **go to bed** last night?
  - I **went to the dentist** yesterday.

### go on...
- **go on**
  - vacation
  - a trip
  - a tour
  - an excursion
  - a cruise
  - strike

- We’re **going on vacation** next week.
- Children often **go on school trips**.
- When we were in Egypt, we **went on a tour** of the Pyramids.
- Workers at the airport have **gone on strike**. (= they are refusing to work)

### go for . . .
- **go (somewhere) for**
  - a walk
  - a run
  - a swim
  - lunch
  - dinner, etc.

- “Where’s Joan?” “She **went for a walk**.”
- Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- The water looks nice. I’m **going for a swim**.
- Should we **go out for dinner**? I know a good restaurant.

### go + -ing

We use **go + -ing** for many sports (swimming/skiing, etc.) and also shopping.

- I go shopping
- he is going swimming
- we went fishing
- they have gone sailing
- she wants to go skiing
- jogging
- running, etc.

- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It’s a nice day. Let’s **go swimming**.
  (or Let’s **go for a swim**.)
- Richard has a small boat, and he often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.
Exercises

56.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.

1. I'm going ___ to China next week.
2. Richard often goes ___ sailing. (no preposition)
3. Sue went ___ Mexico last year.
4. Would you like to go ___ the movies tonight?
5. Jack goes ___ jogging every morning.
6. I'm going out ___ a walk. Do you want to come?
7. I'm tired because I went ___ bed very late last night.
8. Jim is going ___ a trip ___ Turkey next week.
9. The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went ___ a swim.
10. The taxi drivers went ___ strike when I was in New York.
11. I need some stamps, so I'm going ___ the post office.
12. It's late. I have to go ___ home now.
13. Would you like to go ___ a tour of the city?
14. Do you want to go out ___ dinner this evening?
15. My parents are going ___ a cruise this summer.

56.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.

1. Richard has a boat. He often ___ sailing.
2. Last Saturday Diane went ____________________.
3. Gary ____________________ every day.
4. Nicole is going to Colorado next winter. She is ____________________.
5. Peter is going out later. He has to _____________________.
6. Sarah __________________ after work yesterday.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

**a swim**  **vacation**  **Hawaii**  **shopping**  **bed**
**a walk**  **home**  **riding**  **skiing**  **college**

1. The water looks nice. Let's go ___ for a swim ___.
2. After finishing high school, Tina went ____________, where she studied psychology.
3. I'm going ____________ now. I have to buy a few things.
4. I was very tired last night. I went ____________ early.
5. I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went ____________ early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go ____________ almost every weekend.
7. Richard has a horse. He goes ____________ a lot.
8. It's a beautiful day! Would you like to go ____________ in the park?
9. A: Are you going ____________ soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We're going _____________. We've never been there before.
**UNIT 57**

**get**

**A**

get a letter / get a job, etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/find:

- you don't have something

  - "Did you get my postcard?" “Yes, I got it yesterday.” (= receive)
  - I like your sweater. Where did you get it? (= buy)
  - Is it difficult to get a job at the moment? (= find)
  - (on the phone) “Hello, can I speak to Lisa, please?” “Sure. I'll get her.”

**B**

get hungry / get cold / get tired, etc. (get + adjective) = become:

- you're not hungry

  - If you don't eat, you get hungry.
  - Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
  - I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she gets better soon.
  - It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got very wet.

  also

  - get married = Nicole and Frank are getting married soon.
  - get dressed (= put your clothes on) = I got up and got dressed quickly.
  - get lost (= lose your way) = We didn't have a map, so we got lost.

**C**

get to a place = arrive:

- I usually get to work before 8:30. (= arrive at work)
- We left Boston at 10:15 and got to Ottawa at 11:45.

get here/there (without to):

- How did you get here? By bus?

get home (without to):

- What time did you get home last night?

**D**

get in/out/on/off

- get in (a car)
  - Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car and . . .)
  - A car stopped and a man got out. (but A man got out of the car.)
  - We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off at Church Street.
Exercises

57.1 Complete these sentences. Use *get*/*gets* and choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>another one</th>
<th>a doctor</th>
<th>a lot of rain</th>
<th>my postcard</th>
<th>the job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a good salary</td>
<td>a new computer</td>
<td>a ticket</td>
<td>some milk</td>
<td>your jacket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Did you **get my postcard**? I sent it a week ago.
2. Where did you **get**? It's very nice.
3. Quick! This man is sick. We have to **get**.
4. I want to return this phone. It doesn't work. Can I **get** please?
5. Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he **get**.
6. When you go out, can you **get**?
7. “Are you going to the concert?” “Yes, if I can **get**.”
8. Margaret has a well-paid job. She **get**.
9. The weather is horrible here in winter. We **get**
10. I'm going to **get**. The one I have is too slow.

57.2 Complete these sentences. Use **getting** + these words:

cold dark late married ready

1. Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
2. Turn on the light. It's **getting**
3. “I'm **getting** next week.” “Really? Congratulations!”
4. “Where's Karen?” “She's **getting** to go out.”
5. It's **getting**

57.3 Complete the sentences. Use **get**/*gets*/**got** + these words:

angry better hungry lost married old wet

1. If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
2. Don't go out in the rain. You'll **get**
3. My brother **get** last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4. Dan is always very calm. He never **get**
5. We tried to find the hotel, but we **get**
6. Everybody wants to stay young, but we all **get**
7. Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it **get**

57.4 Write sentences with **I left** . . . and **got to** . . .

1. home / 7:30 —► work / 8:15
   I **left** home at 7:30 and **got to** work at 8:15

2. Toronto / 10:15 —► New York / 12:00
   I **left** Toronto at 10:15 and

3. the party / 11:15 —► home / midnight

4. Write a sentence about yourself.
   I **left**

57.5 Write **got in** / **got out of** / **got on** / **got off**.

1. Kate **got in** the car and drove away.
2. I **got on** the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3. Lisa **got out of** the car, locked the doors, and went into a store.
4. I made a stupid mistake. I **got off** the wrong train.
**do and make**

**A**

_Do_ is a general word for actions:

- What are you **doing** tonight? (not What are you making?)
- "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll **do** it."
- Linda's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

**What do you do?** = What's your job?:

- "What do you **do**?" "I work in a bank."

**B**

_Make_ = produce/create. For example:

- She's **making** coffee.
- He has **made** a cake.
- They **make** toys.
- It was **made** in China.

**Expressions with do**

- homework
- housework
- (somebody) a favor
- an exercise
- (your) best
- the laundry
- the dishes

- Have the children **done** their homework?
- I hate **doing** housework, especially cleaning.
- Barbara, could you **do** me a favor?
- I have to **do** four exercises for homework tonight.
- **I did** my best, but I didn't win the race.
- Tim usually **does** the laundry on Saturdays.
- I cooked, so you should **do** the dishes.

**Expressions with make**

- a mistake
- an appointment
- a phone call
- a list
- (a) noise
- a bed

- I'm sorry, I **made** a mistake.
- I need to **make** an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make** a phone call.
- Have you **made** a shopping list?
- It's late. Don't **make** any noise.
- Sometimes I forget to **make** my bed in the morning.

We say make a movie _but_ take a picture:

- When was this movie **made**? _but_ When was this picture **taken**?
Exercises

58.1 Write make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.
1. “Shall I open the window?” “No, that’s OK. I’ll ___ it.”
2. What did you ___________ last weekend? Did you leave town?
3. Do you know how to ___________ bread?
4. Paper is ___________ from wood.
5. Richard didn’t help me. He sat in an armchair and ___________ nothing.
6. “What do you ___________?” “I’m a doctor.”
7. I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you ___________ it?
8. “What do they ___________ in that factory?” “Shoes.”
9. I’m ___________ some coffee. Would you like some?
10. Why are you angry with me? I didn’t ___________ anything wrong.
11. “What are you ___________ tomorrow afternoon?” “I’m working.”

58.2 What are these people doing?

1. He’s making a cake.
2. They __________________
3. He __________________
4. __________________
5. __________________
6. __________________
7. __________________
8. __________________
9. __________________
10. __________________

58.3 Write make or do in the correct form.
1. I hate ___ housework, especially cleaning.
2. Why do you always ______ the same mistake?
3. “Can you ______ me a favor?” “It depends what it is.”
4. “Have you ______ your homework?” “Not yet.”
5. I need to see the dentist, but I haven’t ______ an appointment.
6. Joe ______ his best, but he didn’t pass his driver’s test.
7. I painted the door, but I didn’t ______ it very well.
8. How many phone calls did you ______ yesterday?
9. When you’ve finished Exercise 1, you can ______ Exercise 2.
10. There’s something wrong with the car. The engine is ______ a strange noise.
11. It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I’ve ever ______.
12. Let’s ______ a list of all the things we have to ______ today.
UNIT 59

have

have and have got

I have (something) or I’ve got (something) = it is mine:

■ I have a new car. or I’ve got a new car.
■ Sue has long hair. or Sue has got long hair.
■ Do they have any children? or Have they got any children?
■ Tim doesn’t have a job. or Tim hasn’t got a job.
■ How much time do you have? or How much time have you got?

also

I have / I’ve got

■ I have a headache. or I’ve got a headache.
■ Do you have a cold? or Have you got a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn’t have / Did you have?, etc.:

■ When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
■ He didn’t have any money because he didn’t have a job.
■ Did you have enough time to do everything you wanted?

have breakfast / have a good time, etc.

In these expressions have = eat or drink. You can’t use “have got.”

have

breakfast / lunch / dinner
a meal / a sandwich / (a) pizza, etc.
a cup of coffee / a glass of milk, etc.
something to eat/drink

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

have

a party / a meeting
a nice time / a good trip / fun, etc.
a (nice) day / a (nice) weekend / a (great) vacation
a (good) flight / a safe trip
a dream / an accident
an argument / a discussion
a baby

Compare:

have got or have

■ I’ve got / I have three cups of coffee for this office.

have (not have got)

■ I have coffee with my breakfast every morning.
  (not I’ve got coffee every morning)

A: Where’s Paul?
B: He’s on break. He’s having a cup of coffee.
  (= he’s drinking it now)
59.1 Write the correct form of have or have got.
1. I didn’t have time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2. “Does Lisa have OR Has Lisa got a car?” (Lisa / have?)
   “No, she can’t drive.”
3. He can’t open the door. ______________ a key. (he / not / have)
4. ______________ a cold last week. He’s better now. (Gary / have)
5. What’s wrong? ______________ a headache? (you / have?)
6. We wanted to go by taxi, but ______________ enough money. (we / not / have)
7. Liz is very busy. ______________ much free time. (she / not / have)
8. ______________ any problems when you were on vacation? (you / have?)

59.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:
an argument    breakfast    a cup of tea    dinner    fun -a party-

1. They’re having a party. 4. They __________________________
2. She __________________________ 5. __________________________
3. He __________________________ 6. __________________________

59.3 What do you say in these situations? Use have.
1. Barbara is going on vacation. What do you say to her before she goes?
   __________
   Have a nice vacation!
2. You meet Claire at the airport. She has just gotten off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
   __________
   Did you have a good flight?
3. Tim is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
   __________
4. It’s Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
   __________
5. Paul has just come back from vacation. Ask him about his vacation.
   __________
6. Rachel is going out tonight. What do you say to her before she goes?
   __________
7. Sue’s little boy will be one year old next week. Is there going to be a birthday party? Ask her.
   __________

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.
an accident    a glass of water    a baby
a bad dream    -a party-    something to eat

1. We __________ a party a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2. “Should we ________________________?” “No, I’m not hungry.”
3. I was thirsty, so I __________________________.
4. I __________________________ last night. It woke me up.
5. Tina is a very good driver. She has never __________________________.
6. Rachel is going to __________________________. It will be her first child.
I/me  he/him  they/them, etc.

**A People**

**Subject**  
- I  I know Tom.  
- we  We know Tom.  
- you  You know Tom.  
- he  He knows Tom.  
- she  She knows Tom.  
- they  They know Tom.

**Object**  
- me  Tom knows me.  
- us  Tom knows us.  
- you  Tom knows you.  
- him  Tom knows him.  
- her  Tom knows her.  
- them  Tom knows them.

**B Things**

- I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.

**C We use me/her/them, etc. (object) after a preposition (for/to/with, etc.):**

- This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the movies. Do you want to come with us?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go with them?
- “Where's the newspaper?” “You're sitting on it.”

**give it/them to . . . :**

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give them to him, please?
Exercises

50.1 Complete the sentences with him/her/they.
1. I don't know those girls. Do you know ________?
2. I don't know that man. Do you know ________?
3. I don't know those people. Do you know ________?
4. I don't know David's wife. Do you know ________?
5. I don't know Mr. Stevens. Do you know ________?
6. I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know ________?
7. I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know ________?

50.2 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/she/her, etc.
1. I want to see her, but ________ doesn't want to see ________.
2. They want to see me, but ________ don't want to see ________.
3. She wants to see him, but ________ doesn't want to see ________.
4. We want to see them, but ________ don't want to see ________.
5. He wants to see us, but ________ doesn't want to see ________.
6. They want to see her, but ________ doesn't want to see ________.
7. I want to see them, but ________ don't want to see ________.
8. You want to see her, but ________ doesn't want to see ________.

50.3 Write sentences beginning I like ..., I don't like ..., or Do you like ...?
1. I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them.
2. George is a very nice man. I like ____________________.
3. This jacket isn't very nice. I don't ____________________.
4. This is my new car. Do ____________________?
5. Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I ____________________.
6. These are my new shoes. ____________________?

50.4 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/him, etc.
1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at ________?
2. “Do you know that man?” “Yes, I work with ________.”
3. Where are the tickets? I can't find ________.
4. I can't find my keys. Where are ________?
5. We're going out. You can come with ________.
6. I have a new computer. Do you want to see ________?
7. Maria likes music. ________ plays the piano.
8. I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of ________.
9. I'm talking to you. Please listen to ________.
10. Where is Anna? I want to talk to ________.
11. You can have these DVDs. I don't want ________.
12. My brother has a new job, but ________ doesn't like ________ very much.

50.5 Complete the sentences.
1. I need that book. Can you __________? give it to me__?
2. He wants the key. Can you give __________?
3. She wants the keys. Can you __________?
4. I want that letter. Can you __________?
5. They want the money. Can you __________?
6. We want the photos. Can you __________?
my/his/their, etc.

I → my
we → our
you → your
he → his
she → her
they → their

it → its

Hawaii (= it) is famous for its beaches.

We use my/your/his, etc. + noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>my hands</th>
<th>his new car</th>
<th>her parents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>our clothes</td>
<td>your best friend</td>
<td>their room</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

his/her/their

Donna

her car
(= Donna’s car)

her husband
(= Donna’s husband)

her children
(= Donna’s children)

Andy

his bicycle

his sister

his parents

Mr. and Mrs. Lee

their son

their daughter

their children

its and it’s

its Hawaii is famous for its beaches.
it’s (= it is) I like Hawaii. It’s a beautiful place. (= It is a beautiful place.)
Exercises

51.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1. I'm going to wash __my hands__.
2. She's going to wash __________ hands.
3. We're going to wash _____________.
4. He's going to wash _____________.
5. They're going to wash _____________.
6. Are you going to wash _____________.?

51.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1. He ________ lives with his parents _________.
2. They live with ___________ parents.
3. We ___________ parents.
4. He ___________ parents.
5. They're going to wash _____________.
6. Are you going to wash _____________.?

51.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with his/her/their.

1. I saw Sarah with __her__ husband, Philip.
2. I saw Laura and Steve with ________ children.
3. I saw Steve with _______ wife, Laura.
4. I saw Gary with _______ brother, Tim.
5. I saw Laura with _______ brother, Tim.
6. I saw Sarah and Philip with _______ son, Tim.
7. I saw Laura with _______ parents.
8. I saw Beth and Robert with _______ parents.

51.4 Write my/our/your/his/her/their/its.
1. Do you like your job?
2. I know Mr. Watson, but I don't know ___________ wife.
3. Alice and Tom live in San Francisco. ___________ son lives in Mexico.
4. We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all ___________ friends.
5. Anna is going out with ___________ friends tonight.
6. I like tennis. It's _________ favorite sport.
7. "What is that ___________ car?" "No, I don't have a car."
8. I want to call Maria. Do you know ___________ phone number?
9. Do you think most people are happy with ___________ jobs?
10. I'm going to wash ___________ hair before I go out.
11. This is a beautiful tree. ___________ leaves are a beautiful color.
12. John has a brother and a sister. ___________ brother is 25, and ___________ sister is 21.

51.5 Complete the sentences. Use my/his/their, etc. with these words:

coat homework house husband job key name

1. Jim doesn't like __his job___. It's not very interesting.
2. I can't get in. I don't have _________________.
3. Sally is married. ________________ works in a bank.
4. Please take off ___________ and sit down.
5. "What are the children doing?" "They're doing _________________ ."
6. "Do you know that man?" "Yes, but I don't know _________________ ."
7. We live on Main Street. _________________ is on the corner of Main and First.
Whose is this? It’s mine/yours/hers, etc.

We use **my/your, etc. + noun** (my hands / your book, etc.):
- **My hands** are cold.
- Is this **your** book?
- Helen gave me **her umbrella**.
- It’s **their problem**, not our problem.

We use **mine/yours, etc.** without a noun:
- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn’t have an umbrella, so Helen gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It’s their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:
- “Is this **his camera** or **hers**?” “It’s **his**.”

A friend of **mine** / a friend of **his** / some friends of **yours**, etc.
- I went to the movies with a friend of **mine**. (not a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend of **his**. (not a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of **yours**? (not friends of you)

Whose . . . ?
- **Whose money** is this? **Whose is this?** It’s mine.
- **Whose shoes** are these? **Whose are these?** They’re John’s.
Exercises

52.1 Complete the sentences with mine/yours, etc.

1. It's your money. It's ______.  
2. It's my bag. It's __________________.  
3. It's our car. It's __________________.  
4. They're her shoes. They're __________.  
5. It's their house. It's __________________.  
6. They're your books. They're __________________.  
7. They're my glasses. They're ______.  
8. It's his coat. It's ____________.

52.2 Choose the right word.

1. It's their/ theirs problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)  
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?  
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.  
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?  
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends tonight.  
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.  
7. They've got two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.  
8. Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

52.3 Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours, etc.

1. I went to the movies with a __________________.  
2. They went on vacation with some __________________.  
3. She's going out with a __________________.  
4. We had dinner with some __________________.  
5. I played tennis with a __________________.  
6. Tom is going to meet a __________________.  
7. Do you know those people? Are they __________________?

52.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

1. Whose car is this?  
   It's theirs.  
2. __________________ is this?  
   It's __________.  
3. __________________ these?  
   They __________.  
4. __________________?  
5. __________________?  
6. __________________?  

### I/me/my/mine

**I, etc.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I know Tom.</th>
<th>Tom knows me.</th>
<th>It's my car.</th>
<th>It's mine.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**We know Tom.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We know Tom.</th>
<th>Tom knows us.</th>
<th>It's our car.</th>
<th>It's ours.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**You know Tom.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You know Tom.</th>
<th>Tom knows you.</th>
<th>It's your car.</th>
<th>It's yours.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**He knows Tom.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He knows Tom.</th>
<th>Tom knows him.</th>
<th>It's his car.</th>
<th>It's his.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**She knows Tom.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>She knows Tom.</th>
<th>Tom knows her.</th>
<th>It's her car.</th>
<th>It's hers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**They know Tom.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>They know Tom.</th>
<th>Tom knows them.</th>
<th>It's their car.</th>
<th>It's theirs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

**Study these examples:**

- "Do **you** know that man?" "Yes, I know **him**, but I can't remember **his name**."
- She was very happy because we invited **her** to stay with **us** at our **house**.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?  
  B: Yes, they are playing with their **friends** in the park.
- That's my pen. Can you give it to **me**, please?
- "Is this **your hat**?" "No, it's **yours**."
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave **him** hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm going out with a friend of mine tonight. (not a friend of me)
Exercises

53.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1. Do you know that man?
   Yes, I know him, but I can’t remember his name.

2. Do you know that woman?
   Yes, I know her, but I can’t remember her name.

3. Do you know those people?
   Yes, I know them, but I can’t remember their names.

53.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her ____________ to stay with us at our house.
2. He invited us to stay with ____________ at his house.
3. They invited me to stay with ____________ house.
4. I invited them to stay ____________ house.
5. She invited us to stay ____________ house.
6. Did you invite him ____________ house?

53.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him ____________ address, and he gave me ____________.
2. I gave her ____________ address, and she gave me ____________.
3. He gave me ____________ address, and I gave ____________.
4. We gave them ____________ address, and they gave ____________.
5. She gave him ____________ address, and he gave ____________.
6. You gave us ____________ address, and we gave ____________.
7. They gave you ____________ address, and you gave ____________.

53.4 Write him/her/your, etc.

1. Where’s Amanda? Have you seen ____________?
2. Where are my keys? Where did I put ____________?
3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to ____________?
4. We don’t see ____________ neighbors much. They’re not at home very often.
5. “I can’t find my pen. Can I use ____________?” “Sure.”
6. We’re going to the movies. Why don’t you come with ____________?
7. Did your sister pass ____________ driver’s test?
8. Some people talk about ____________ jobs all the time.
9. Last night I went out for dinner with a friend of ____________.
myself/yourself/themselves, etc.

Help yourself!

He's looking at himself

They're enjoying themselves.

I → me → myself
he → him → himself
she → her → herself
you → you → yourself
we → us → yourselves
they → them → ourselves

I looked at myself in the mirror.
He cut himself with a knife.
She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt herself.
Please help yourself. (one person)
Please help yourselves. (two or more people)
We had a good vacation. We enjoyed ourselves.
They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

Compare:

me/him/them, etc.

She is looking at him.
different people

You never talk to me.
I didn't pay for them.
I'm sorry. Did I hurt you?

myself/himself/themselves, etc.

He is looking at himself.
the same person

Sometimes I talk to myself
They paid for themselves.
Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.

by myself / by yourself, etc. = alone:

I went on vacation by myself. (= I went alone)
"Was she with friends?" "No, she was by herself."

each other

Kate and Helen are good friends. They know each other well.
(= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
Paul and I live near each other. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:

Tim and Sue looked at each other.
(= he looked at her, she looked at him)

Tim and Sue looked at themselves.
(= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)
Exercise 54.1 Complete the sentences with myself/yourself, etc.

1. He looked at **himself** in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with _____________.
3. Karen had a good time in Brazil. She enjoyed _____________.
4. My friends had a good time in Brazil. They enjoyed _____________.
5. I picked up a very hot plate and burned _____________.
6. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about _____________.
7. I want to know more about you. Tell me about _____________. (one person)
8. Good-bye! Have a good trip and take care of _____________. (two people)

Exercise 54.2 Write sentences with by myself / by yourself, etc.

1. I went on vacation alone. / I went on vacation by myself.
2. When I saw him, he was alone. / When I saw him, he ____________________.
3. Don't go out alone. / Don't ____________________.
4. I went to the movies alone. / I ____________________.
5. My sister lives alone. / My sister ____________________.
6. Many people live alone. / Many people ____________________.

Exercise 54.3 Write sentences with each other.

1. I like her. They like each other.
2. I can't see her. They can't see each other.
3. I call him a lot. They call each other a lot.
4. I don't know him. They don't know each other.
5. I'm sitting next to him. They are sitting next to each other.
6. I gave her a present. They gave each other a present.

Exercise 54.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

each other or ourselves/yourself/themselves or us/you/them

1. Paul and I live near _____________.
2. Who are those people? Do you know _____________.
3. You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help _____________.
4. There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help _____________.
5. We didn't go to Linda's party. She didn't invite _____________.
6. When we go on vacation, we always enjoy _____________.
7. Mary and Jane went to school together, but they never see _____________.
8. Diane and I are very good friends. We've known _____________. for a long time.
9. "Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?" "Yes, but I didn't speak to _____________."
10. Many people talk to _____________. when they're alone.
We normally use 's for people:
- I stayed at my sister's house. (not the house of my sister)
- Have you met Mr. Black's wife? (not the wife of Mr. Black)
- Are you going to James's party?
- Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

You can use 's without a noun after it:
- Sophie's hair is longer than Kate's. (= Kate's hair)
- "Whose umbrella is this?" "It's my mother's." (= my mother's umbrella)
- "Where were you last night?" "I was at Paul's." (= Paul's house)

friend's and friends'

my friend's house = one friend
(= his house or her house)

We write 's after
friend/student/mother, etc. (singular):
- my mother's car (one mother)
- my father's car (one father)

my friends' house = two or more friends
(= their house)

We write ' after
friends/students/parents, etc. (plural):
- my parents' car (two parents)

We use of . . . for things, places, etc.:
- Look at the roof of that building. (not that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning of the movie. (not the movie's beginning)
- What's the name of this town?
- Do you know the cause of the problem?
- You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.
Exercises

55.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.

Blanca and Pedro are married. They have a son, Alberto, and a daughter, Julia. Julia is married to Paul. Julia and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1. Pedro is Blanca’s __husband__
2. Julia is Daniel’s __mother__
3. Blanca is ____________ wife.
4. Alberto is Julia’s ____________
5. Alberto is ____________ uncle.
6. Julia is ____________ wife.
7. Blanca is Daniel’s ____________
8. Julia is Alberto’s ____________
9. Paul is ____________ husband.
10. Paul is Daniel’s ____________
11. Daniel is ____________ nephew.

55.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.

1. Whose is this? Alice’s
2. Whose is this? ____________
3. And this? ____________
4. And these? ____________
5. And this? ____________
6. And these? ____________

55.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. _______
2. What is the name of this village? _______
3. Do you like the color of this coat? _______
4. Do you know the phone number of Simon? _______
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. _______
6. Write your name at the top of the page. _______
7. For me, morning is the best part of the day. _______
8. The favorite color of Paula is blue. _______
9. When is the birthday of your mother? _______
10. The house of my parents isn’t very big. _______
11. The walls of this house are very thin. _______
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. _______
13. Are you going to the party of Sylvia next week? _______
14. The manager of the hotel is not here right now. _______
a/an = one thing or person:
- Rachel works in a bank. (not in bank)
- Can I ask a question? (not ask question)
- I don't have a computer.
- There's a woman at the bus stop.

an (not a) before a/e/i/o/u:
- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting program on TV last night.

also an hour (h is not pronounced: an hour)
but a university (pronounced yuniversity)
a European country (pronounced yuropean)

another (= an + other) is one word:
- Can I have another cup of coffee?

We use a/an . . . when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:
- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an . . . for jobs, etc.:
- A: What do you do?
  B: I'm a dentist. (not I'm dentist)
- "What does Mark do?" "He's an engineer."
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?
66.1 Write a or an.

1. ___________ old book
2. ___________ window
3. ___________ horse
4. ___________ airport
5. ___________ new airport
6. ___________ organization
7. ___________ university
8. ___________ hour
9. ___________ economic problem

66.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

- bird
- planet
- flower
- fruit
- game
- mountain
- musical instrument

1. A duck is ___________.
2. A carrot is ___________.
3. Tennis is ___________.
4. A hammer is ___________.
5. Everest is ___________.
6. Saturn is ___________.
7. A banana is ___________.
8. The Amazon is ___________.
9. A rose is ___________.
10. A trumpet is ___________.

66.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the box and complete the sentences.

- architect
- dentist
- electrician
- nurse
- photographer
- sales clerk
- taxi driver

1. She’s a dentist.
2. He’s ___________.
3. She ___________.
4. ___________.
5. ___________.
6. ___________.
7. ___________.
8. And you? I’m ___________.

66.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use a/an where necessary.

I can’t ride. Tonight I’m going to.
Rebecca works in. Jane wants to learn.
old house. artist
party. foreign language
office. bicycle

1. I want to ask you a question.
2. ____________________________________________________________
3. ____________________________________________________________
4. ____________________________________________________________
5. ____________________________________________________________
6. ____________________________________________________________
7. ____________________________________________________________
8. ____________________________________________________________
train(s)  bus(es) (singular and plural)

The plural of a noun is usually -s:

- singular (= one)  →  plural (= two or more)
  - a flower  →  some flowers
  - a train  →  two trains
  - one week  →  a few weeks
  - a nice place  →  some nice places
  - this student  →  these students

- Spelling (see Appendix 5):

  - -s / -sh / -ch / -x  →  -es
    - bus  →  buses
    - church  →  churches
    - potato  →  potatoes
    - also
      - -y  →  -ies
        - baby  →  babies
        - party  →  parties
      - but -ay / -ey / -oy  →  -ys
        - day  →  days
        - monkey  →  monkeys
        - boy  →  boys
      - -f / -fe  →  -ves
        - shelf  →  shelves
        - knife  →  knives
    - some flowers

These things are plural in English:

- scissors
- glasses
- pants
- jeans
- shorts
- tights
- pajamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of pants / a pair of pajamas, etc.:
- I need a new pair of jeans.  or  I need some new jeans. (not a new jeans)

Some plurals do not end in -s:

- this man  →  these men
- a woman  →  some women
- a child  →  many children

- one foot  →  two feet
- a tooth  →  all my teeth
- a fish  →  a lot of fish
- a mouse  →  some mice

- also a person  →  two people / some people / a lot of people, etc.:
  - She's a nice person.
  - but They are nice people. (not nice persons)

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have, etc.:
- A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police is plural:
- The police want to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (not The police wants)
57.1 Write the plural.

1. flower  _______  5. umbrella  _______  9. family  _______
2. boat  _______  6. address  _______  10. foot  _______
3. woman  _______  7. knife  _______  11. holiday  _______
4. city  _______  8. sandwich  _______  12. potato  _______

57.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. There are a lot of sheep in the field.
2. Gary is brushing his _______.
3. There are three _______ at the bus stop.
4. Lucy has two _______.
5. There are a lot of _______ in the river.
6. The _______ are falling from the tree.

57.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1. I'm going to buy some flowers.
   OK
   I need a new pair of jeans.  OR
   I need some new jeans.

2. I need a new jeans.

3. It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.

4. There was a woman in the car with two mens.

5. Sheep eat grass.

6. David is married and has three childs.

7. Most of my friend are student.

8. He put on his pajama and went to bed.

9. We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish.

10. Do you know many persons in this town?

11. I like your pant. Where did you get it?

12. Montreal is usually full of tourist.

13. I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.

14. This scissor isn't very sharp.

57.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It's a nice place. Many people _______ there on vacation.
   go or goes?

2. Some people _______ always late.
   is or are?

3. The new city hall is not a very beautiful building. Most people _______ like it.
   don't or doesn't?

4. A lot of people _______ television every day.
   watch or watches?

5. Three people _______ injured in the accident.
   was or were?

6. How many people _______ in that house?
   live or lives?

7. _______ the police know the cause of the explosion?
   Do or Does?

8. The police _______ looking for the stolen car.
   is or are?

9. I need my glasses, but I can't find _______.
   it or them?

10. I'm going to buy _______ new jeans today.
   a or some?
A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

**Countable nouns**

For example: (a) car    (a) man    (a) bottle    (a) house    (a) key    (an) idea    (an) accident

You can use **one/two/three**, etc. + *countable nouns* (you can count them):

- one bottle
- two bottles
- three men
- four houses

Countable nouns can be *singular (= one)* or *plural (= two or more)*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a car</td>
<td>the car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my car, etc.</td>
<td>some cars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cars</td>
<td>two cars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the cars</td>
<td>some cars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my car, etc.</td>
<td>many cars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some cars</td>
<td>many cars, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’ve got a car.
- New cars are very expensive.
- There aren’t many cars in the parking lot.

You can’t use the singular *(car/bottle/key, etc.)* alone. You need *a/an*:

- We can’t get into the house without a key. *(not without key)*

**Uncountable nouns**

For example: water    air    rice    salt    plastic    money    music    tennis

- water
- salt
- money
- music

You can’t say **one/two/three**, etc. + these things:

- one water
- two music

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:

- money
- the money
- my money
- some money
- much money, etc.

- I have some money.
- There isn’t much money in the box.
- Money isn’t everything.

You can’t use *a/an* + *uncountable nouns*: money    music    water

But you can say a *piece of* . . . / a *bottle of* . . . , etc. + *uncountable noun*:

- a bottle of water  a bottle of perfume  a piece of music
- a carton of milk    a piece of cheese    a piece of music
- a bar of soap  a bowl of rice  a cup of coffee  a game of tennis
58.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket  egg  envelope  money  pitcher  salt
sand  spoon  toothbrush  toothpaste  wallet  water

1. It's salt.
2. It's a spoon.
3. It's ________.
4. It's ________.
5. It's ________.
6. It's ________.
7. It's ________.
8. It's ________.
9. It's ________.
10. It's ________.
11. It's ________.
12. It's ________.

58.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.

1. I don't have watch. a watch
2. Do you like cheese? OK
3. I never wear hat.
4. Are you looking for job?
5. Kate doesn't eat meat.
6. Kate eats apple every day.
7. I'm going to party tonight.
8. Music is wonderful thing.
9. Jamaica is island.
10. I don't need key.
11. Everybody needs food.
12. I've got good idea.
13. Can you drive car?
14. Do you want cup of coffee?
15. I don't like coffee without milk.
16. Don't go out without coat.

58.3 What are these things? Write a . . . of . . . for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

bar  bowl  carton  cup  glass  jar  loaf  piece  piece  bread  honey  milk  paper  soap  soup  tea  water  wood

1. a carton of milk
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. ________
6. ________
7. ________
8. ________
9. ________
a cake / some cake / some cakes
(countable/uncountable 2)

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe, etc.):
- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes, etc.):
- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music, etc.):
- I need some water.
- Would you like some cheese?
  (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a and some:
- Nicole bought a hat, some shoes, and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, made some phone calls, and listened to some music.

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

- I need some water.
- Would you like some cheese?
  (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:
- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
  but I want to make a shopping list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not a paper)

Be careful with:

advice bread furniture hair information news weather work

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say a/an ... (a bread, an advice) and
they can't be plural (advices, furnitures, etc.).

- Can I talk to you? I need some advice. (not an advice)
- I'm going to buy some bread. (not a bread)
- They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (not furnitures)
- Sylvia has very long hair. (not hairs)
- I'd like some information about hotels in Mexico City. (not informations)
- Listen! I've got some good news. (not a good news)
- It's nice weather today. (not a nice weather)
- "Do you like your job?" "Yes, but it's hard work." (not a hard work)

We say a job (but not a work):
- I've got a new job. (not a new work)
Exercises

1. **What did you buy? Use the pictures to write sentences (I bought...).**

1. I bought some perfume, a hat, and some shoes.
2. __________________________
3. __________________________
4. __________________________

2. **Write sentences with Would you like a...? or Would you like some...?**

1. Would you like some cheese?
2. Would you like __________________?
3. Would ____________________?
4. __________________________
5. __________________________
6. __________________________

3. **Write a/an or some.**

1. I read __________ book and listened to __________ music.
2. I need __________ money. I want to buy __________ food.
3. We met __________ interesting people at the party.
4. I’m going to open __________ window to get __________ fresh air.
5. Rachel didn’t eat much for lunch – only __________ apple and __________ bread.
6. We live in __________ big house. There’s __________ nice yard with __________ beautiful trees.
7. I’m going to make a table. First I need __________ wood.
8. Listen to me carefully. I’m going to give you __________ advice.
9. I want to write a letter. I need __________ paper and __________ pen.

4. **Which is right?**

1. I’m going to buy some new __________ shoe/shoes. (shoes is right)
2. Mark has brown __________ eye/eyes.
3. Paula has short black __________ hair/hairs.
4. The tour guide gave us some __________ information/informations about the city.
5. We’re going to buy some new __________ chair/chairs.
6. We’re going to buy some new __________ furniture/furnitures.
7. It’s hard to find a __________ work/job these days.
8. We had __________ wonderful weather/a wonderful weather when we were on vacation.
UNIT 70

a/an and the

a/an

Can you open a window?

There are three windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I have a car.
  (there are many cars and I have one)
- Can I ask a question?
  (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there a hotel near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is an interesting city. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is a student.
  (there are many students and Lisa is one)

Compare a and the:

- I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap, but the shirt was expensive.
  (= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

We say the . . . when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light, etc. (of a room)
the roof / the backyard / the kitchen / the bathroom, etc. (of a house)
the airport / the police station / the bus station / the mayor’s office, etc. (of a city)

- “Where’s Tom?” “In the kitchen.”
  (= the kitchen of this house or apartment)
- Turn off the light and close the door.
  (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from the airport?
  (= the airport of your town)
- I’d like to speak to the manager, please.
  (= the manager of this store, etc.)
**Exercises**

**30.1 Write a/an or the.**

1. We enjoyed our trip. **The** hotel was very nice.
2. “Can I ask a question?” “Sure. What do you want to know?”
3. You look very tired. You need **an** vacation.
4. “Where’s Tom?” “He’s in **the** kitchen.”
5. Eve is **an** interesting person. You should meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to **the** post office?
   B: Yes, go straight and then take **the** next left.
7. A: Let’s go and see **a** movie tonight.
   B: OK, that’s **a** good idea.
8. It’s **an** nice morning. Let’s go for **a** walk.
9. Amanda is **an** student. When she finishes school, she wants to be **an** journalist.
   She lives with two friends in **a** apartment near **the** college where she is studying. **a** apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have two children, **a** boy and **a** girl. **The** boy is seven years old, and **the** girl is three. Peter works in **a** factory. Mary doesn’t have **a** job outside the home right now.

**30.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:**

**airport**  **cup**  **dictionary**  **door**  **floor**  **picture**

1. Can you open **the** door, please?
2. How far is it to **an** airport?
3. Can I have **a** cup of coffee, please?
4. That’s **a** nice picture — I like it.
5. Can you pass me **the** door, please?
6. Why are you sitting on **the** floor?

**30.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.**

1. Don’t forget to **turn off the light** when you go out. **turn off the light**
2. Enjoy your trip, and don’t forget to send me postcard. **postcard**
3. What is name of this town? **name**
4. Canada is very big country. **country**
5. What is largest city in Canada? **city**
6. I like this room, but I don’t like color of carpet. **color of carpet**
7. “Are you OK?” “No, I’ve got headache.” **headache**
8. We live in old house near station. **house**
9. What is name of director of movie we saw last night? **name**
We use *the* when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- **What is the name of this street?** (there is only one name)
- **Who is the best player on your team?** (there is only one best player)
- **Can you tell me the time, please?** (= the time now)
- **My office is on the first floor.** (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget *the*:

- **Do you live near the airport?** *(not near airport)*
- **Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?** *(not where is nearest...)*

The same...

- **We live on the same street.** *(not on same street)*
- **"Are these two books different?" "No, they're the same."** *(not they're same)*

We say:

- **The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- **Do you live in a city or in the country?**
- **My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.**
- **What do you think of the police? Do they do a good job?**
- **Write your name at the top of the page.**
- **Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?**
- **Paula is learning to play the piano.**
- **I listen to the radio a lot.**
- **Do you use the Internet much?**

We do *not* use the with:

- **television/TV**
  - I watch TV a lot.
  - What's on television tonight?
- **breakfast/lunch/dinner**
  - What did you have for breakfast? *(not the breakfast)*
  - Dinner is ready!
- **next/last + week/month/year/summer/Monday, etc.**
  - I'm not working next week. *(not the next week)*
  - Did you take a vacation last summer? *(not the last summer)*
Exercises

UNIT 71

71.1 Put in the where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is already correct.

1. What is name of this street?
   the name ________________

2. What's on television tonight?

3. Our apartment is on second floor.

4. Would you like to go to moon?

5. What is best hotel in this town?

6. What time is lunch?

7. How far is it to football stadium?

8. We're taking a trip at end of May.

9. What are you doing next weekend?

10. I didn't like her first time I met her.

11. I'm going out after dinner.

12. Internet is a good place to get information.

13. My sister got married last month.

14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right.

15. We live in country about 10 miles from nearest town.

71.2 Complete the sentences. Use the same + these words:

- age
- color
- problem
- street
- time

1. I live on North Street, and you live on North Street. We live on ________________.

2. I arrived at 8:30, and you arrived at 8:30. We arrived at ________________________.

3. Jim is 25, and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are ________________.

4. My shirt is dark blue, and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are ________________.

5. I have no money, and you have no money. We have ________________.

6. The sun ________________ is shining. 4. He's watching ____________________.

7. She's playing _____________________. 5. They're swimming in _____________________.

8. They're having _____________________. 6. Tim's name is at ________________ of the list.

71.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the if necessary.

1. We had ________________ at a restaurant last night.

2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember _____________________.

3. ________________ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.

4. Sometimes there are some good programs on _____________________. late at night.

5. ________________ stopped me because I was driving too fast.

6. Tokyo is ________________ of Japan.

7. “What did you have for ____________________?” “A salad.”

8. I woke up in ________________ of the night.

71.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

- capital
- dinner
- lunch
- middle
- name
- police
- sky
- television

1. We had ________________ at a restaurant last night.

2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember _____________________.

3. ________________ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.

4. Sometimes there are some good programs on _____________________. late at night.

5. ________________ stopped me because I was driving too fast.

6. Tokyo is ________________ of Japan.

7. “What did you have for ____________________?” “A salad.”

8. I woke up in ________________ of the night.
go to work  go home  go to the movies

We say:

(go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work
  - Bye! I’m going to work now. (not to the work)
  - I finish work at 5:00 every day.

(go) to school, (be) at school, start school, finish school, etc.
  - What did you learn at school today? (not at the school)
  - Some children don’t like school.

(go) to college, (be) in college
  - Helen wants to go to college when she finishes high school.
  - What did you study in college?

(go) to class, (be) in class
  - I can’t talk now. I have to go to class.
  - I’ll be in class until 5:00 today. I’ll call you when I get out.

(go) to prison/jail, (be) in prison/jail
  - Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to church, (be) in/at church
  - David usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to bed, (be) in bed
  - I’m tired. I’m going to bed. (not to the bed)
  - “Where’s Jane?”  “She’s in bed.”

(go) home, (be) (at) home, etc.
  - I’m tired. I’m going home. (not to home)
  - Are you going out tonight, or are you staying home? (or staying at home)

We say:

(go to) the movies / the theater / the bank / the post office / the hospital / the station / the airport
  - I never go to the theater, but I go to the movies a lot.
  - “Are you going to the bank?”  “No, to the post office.”
  - The number 5 bus goes to the airport; the number 8 goes to the train station.

(go to) the doctor, the dentist
  - You’re not well. Why don’t you go to the doctor?
  - I have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
Exercises

72.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1. He's in _____________. 3. She's in _____________. 5. They're at _____________.
2. They're at _____________. 4. She's at _____________. 6. He's in _____________.

72.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

bank  bed  church  home  post office  school  station

1. I need to get some money. I have to go to the bank.
2. David usually goes to church on Sundays.
3. In the United States, children start at the age of five.
4. There were a lot of people at the station waiting for the train.
5. I called you last night, but you weren't at home.
6. I'm going to the bank now. Good night!
7. I'm going to the post office to get some stamps.

72.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1. If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.
2. If you want to see a movie, you go to the movie theater.
3. If you are tired and you want to sleep, you go to bed.
4. If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you are arrested.
5. If you have a problem with your teeth, you go to the dentist.
6. If you want to study after you finish high school, you go to college.
7. If you are badly injured in an accident, you go to the hospital.

72.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. We went (to movies) last night.
2. I finish work at 5:00 every day.
3. Lisa wasn’t feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
4. I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
5. Why is Angela always late for work?
6. “Where are your children?” “They’re at school.”
7. We have no money in bank.
8. When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9. What time do you usually get home from work?
10. Sorry I couldn’t call you back earlier. I was in class.
11. “Where should we meet?” “At station.”
12. Kate takes her children to school every day.
13. Jim is sick. He’s in hospital.
14. Would you like to go to college?
15. Would you like to go to theater tonight?
I like music. I hate exams.

Do not use the for general ideas:

- I like music, especially classical music. (not the music ... the classical music)
- We don’t eat meat very often. (not the meat)
- Life is not possible without water. (not The life ... the water)
- I hate exams. (not the exams)
- Do you know where I can buy foreign newspapers?
- I’m not very good at writing letters.

Do not use the for games and sports:

- My favorite sports are tennis and skiing. (not the tennis ... the skiing)

Do not use the for languages or school subjects (history/geography/physics/biology, etc.):

- Do you think English is difficult? (not the English)
- Tom’s brother is studying physics and chemistry.

flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- Flowers are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- I don’t like cold weather. (= cold weather in general)
- We don’t eat fish very often. (= fish in general)
- Are you interested in history? (= history in general)
- I love your garden. The flowers are beautiful. (= the flowers in your garden)
- The weather isn’t very good today. (= the weather today)
- We had a great meal last night. The fish was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
- Do you know much about the history of your country?
33.1 What do you think about these things?

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like . . . I don't like . . . I love . . . I hate . . . . . . is/are all right

1. ______________________ OR 2. ______________________ OR 3. ______________________ OR 4. ______________________ OR 5. ______________________ OR 6. ______________________ OR 7. ______________________ OR 8. ______________________

33.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in . . . I know a lot about . . . I don't know much about . . .
I'm not interested in . . . I know a little about . . . I don't know anything about . . .

1. (history) ______________________
2. (politics) ______________________
3. (sports) ______________________
4. (art) ______________________
5. (astronomy) ______________________
6. (economics) ______________________

33.3 Which is right?

1. My favorite sport is football / the football. (football is right)
2. I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping at the mall this morning. Stores / The stores were very crowded.
6. "Where's milk / the milk?" "It's in the fridge."
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play basketball / the basketball."
9. "What does your brother do?" "He sells computers / the computers."
10. We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15. Houses / The houses on this street are all the same.
16. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17. I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
18. Do you want to see pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on vacation?
19. English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20. Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.
the . . . (names of places)

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns, etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of places:
- Quebec is a province of Canada.
- Bangkok is the capital of Thailand.
- Hawaii is an island in the Pacific.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use the in names with republic/states/kingdom:
- the Dominican Republic
- the Czech Republic
- the United States of America (the USA)
- the United Kingdom (the UK)

the -s (plural names)

We use the with plural names of countries/islands/mountains:
- the Netherlands
- the Hawaiian Islands
- the Philippines
- the Andes

Seas, rivers, etc.

We use the with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:
- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Amazon
- the Nile (River)
- the Panama Canal
- the Black (Sea)

Places in towns (streets, buildings, etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of streets, squares, etc.:
- Kevin lives on Central Avenue.
- Where is Main Street, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the with names of airports, stations, universities, and parks.
- O'Hare International Airport
- Harvard University
- Pennsylvania Station
- Yosemite (National Park)

But we use the with names of most hotels, museums, theaters, and monuments:
- the Regent Hotel
- the Metropolitan (Museum)
- the Taj Mahal
- the National Theater
- the Odeon (movie theater)
- the Lincoln Memorial

the . . . of . . .

We use the + names with . . . of . . .:
- the Museum of Modern Art
- the Great Wall of China
- the University of California
- the Statue of Liberty

We say the north / the south / the east / the west (of . . .):
- I've been to the north of Italy, but not to the south.
1. Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
2. The Atlantic is between Africa and America.
3. __________ is a country in northern Europe.
4. __________ is a river in South America.
5. __________ is the largest continent in the world.
6. __________ is the largest ocean.
7. __________ is a river in Europe.
8. __________ is a country in East Africa.
9. __________ is between Canada and Mexico.
10. __________ are mountains in South America.
11. __________ is the capital of Thailand.
12. __________ are mountains in central Europe.
13. __________ is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14. __________ is an island in the Caribbean.
15. __________ are a group of islands near Florida.

4.2 Write the where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1. Kevin lives on Central Avenue. OK
2. We went to see a play at National Theater. at the National Theater
3. Have you ever been to China?
4. Have you ever been to Philippines?
5. Have you ever been to south of France?
6. Can you tell me where Washington Monument is?
7. Can you tell me where Hollywood Boulevard is?
8. Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?
9. Europe is bigger than Australia.
10. Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?
12. Did you go to National Gallery when you were in Washington?
13. We stayed at Park Hotel near Central Park.
14. How far is it from Times Square to Kennedy Airport?
15. Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
17. I hope to go to United Kingdom next year.
18. Mary comes from west of Ireland.
19. Alan is a student at University of Michigan.
20. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.
We use *this* / *that* / *these* / *those* with a noun (*this picture* / *those girls*, etc.) or without a noun:

- *This hotel* is expensive, but it's very nice.
- "*Who's that girl?*" "I don't know."
- Do you like *these shoes?* I bought them last week.
- *Those apples* look nice. Can I have one?

- *This* is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
- "Excuse me, is *this* your bag?" "Oh yes, thank you."
- *Who’s that?* (= *Who is that person?*)
- Which shoes do you like better – *these* or *those*?

---

that = something that *has happened*:

- "I'm sorry I forgot to call you." "That's all right."
- *That* was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody *has just said*:

- "You're a teacher, aren't you?" "Yes, that's right."
- "Mark has a new job." "He does? I didn't know that."
- "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, that's nice."

---

We use *this* is . . . and *is this* . . . ? on the telephone:

- Hi Sarah, *this is* David. (= the speaker)
- *Is this* Sarah? (= the other person)

We use *this* is . . . to introduce people:

- A: Brian, *this is* Chris.
  B: Hello, Chris. Nice to meet you.
  C: Hi.
75.1 Complete the sentences. Use *this/that/these/those* + these words:

- birds
- dishes
- house
- postcards
- seat
- shoes

1. Do you like these shoes?
2. Who lives in ________?
3. How much are ________?
4. Look at ________.
5. Excuse me, is ________ free?
6. ________ are dirty.

75.2 Write questions: *Is this/that your . . . ?* or *Are these/those your . . . ?*

1. Is this your bag?
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. ________
6. ________
7. ________
8. ________
9. ________
10. ________

75.3 Complete the sentences with *this is* or *that's* or *that.*

1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.  
   B: That's all right.
2. A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.  
   B: Oh, ________ too bad. Why not?
3. (on the phone)  
   Sue: Hello, Jane. ________ Sue.  
   Jane: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?
   B: ________ not true!
5. A: Beth plays the piano very well.  
   B: Does she? I didn't know ________.
6. Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.  
   Paul: Mark, ________ my sister, Helen.  
   Mark: Hi, Helen.
7. A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.  
   B: ________ OK. Forget it!
8. A: You're a friend of Tim's, aren't you?  
   B: Yes, ________ right.
one/(a ...) (sing.)

These chocolates are good. Would you like one?

Would you like one?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple, etc.)

- I need a pen. Do you have one? (one = a pen)
- A: Is there a bank near here?
  B: Yes, there's one on the corner. (one = a bank)

one (plural)

Which ones? = Which flowers?
ones = flowers/cars/girls, etc.

don't buy those. Buy the other ones.

the . . . one

- Which flowers do you want? These or those? (usually not these ones or those ones)

the . . . ones

- Which book is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

- I don't like the red shoes, but I like the green ones.
- Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some . . . ones

- These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
- My shoes are very old. I'm going to buy some new ones.

- A: Which hotel did you stay at?
  B: The one near the airport.
- I found these keys. Are they the ones you lost?

- A: Which books are yours?
  B: The ones on the table.
- I found these keys. Are they the ones you lost?

- Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

- I don't like the black coat, but I like the brown one.
- Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- That cookie was good. I'm going to have another one.
UNIT 76

76.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not a/an . . .) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car
there's a drugstore on First Avenue
B doesn't have a pen
B just had a cup of coffee
B is going to get a bike
B doesn't have an umbrella

1. A: Can you lend me a pen?  
   B: I'm sorry, I don't have one.

2. A: Would you like to have a car?  
   B: No, I don't have one.

3. A: Do you have a bike?  
   B: No, but I'm going to get one.

4. A: Can you lend me an umbrella?  
   B: I'm sorry, but I don't have one.

5. A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  
   B: No, thank you.

6. A: Is there a drugstore near here?  
   B: Yes, there's a one on First Avenue.

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an . . . one. Use the words in the list.

better big clean different new old

1. This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2. I'm going to sell my car and buy a new one.
3. That's not a very good picture. This is a better one.
4. I want today's newspaper. This is an old one.
5. This box is too small. I need a bigger one.
6. Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to a different one.

76.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use one/ones.

1. A stayed at a hotel. It was near the airport.
   A: We stayed at a hotel.
   B: Which one?
   A: The one near the airport.

2. A sees some shoes in a store window.
   They're green.
   A: I like those shoes.
   B: Which ones?
   A: The green ones.

3. A is looking at a house. It has a red door.
   A: That's a nice house.
   B: What about this one?
   A: This one with the red door.

4. A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.
   A: Are those your CDs?
   B: Which ones?
   A: These ones on the top shelf.

5. A is looking at a jacket in a store. It's black.
   A: Do you like that jacket?
   B: Which one?
   A: This black one.

6. A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.
   A: That's an interesting picture.
   B: Which one?
   A: This one on the wall.

7. A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.
   A: Do you know that girl?
   B: Which one?
   A: The girl with long hair.

8. A is looking at some flowers in the garden.
   They're yellow.
   A: Those flowers are beautiful.
   B: Which ones?
   A: The yellow ones.

9. A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a mustache and glasses.
   A: Who's that man?
   B: Which one?
   A: The man with a mustache.

10. A took some pictures at the party last week.
    A: Did I show you my pictures?
    B: Which ones?
    A: These ones from the party.
some and any

Use **some** in **positive** sentences:
- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** ice in the fridge.
- We made **some** mistakes.

Use **any** in **negative** sentences:
- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't** any milk in the fridge.
- We didn't make **any** mistakes.

**any** and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (not **some**):
- Is there **any** ice in the fridge?
- Does he have **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we **offer** things (**Would you like . . . ?**):
- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we **ask** for things (**Can I have . . . ?**, etc.):
- A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me **some** money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

**some** and **any** without a noun

- I didn't take any pictures, but Jane took **some**. (= some pictures)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have **any**." (= any luggage)
- "Are there any cookies?" "Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen." (= some cookies)

**something** / **somebody** (or **someone**)  
- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (or **someone**).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- **Somebody**'s at the door.

**anything** / **anybody** (or **anyone**)  
- She didn't say **anything**.
- I didn't see **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?
1. I bought some cheese, but I didn’t buy any bread.
2. I’m going to the post office. I need _____ stamps.
3. There aren’t _____ gas stations in this part of town.
4. Gary and Alice don’t have ______ children.
5. Do you have _______ brothers or sisters?
6. There are _______ beautiful flowers in the garden.
7. Do you know _______ good hotels in Miami?
8. “Would you like _______ tea?” “Yes, please.”
9. When we were on vacation, we visited ____ very interesting places.
10. Don’t buy _______ rice. We don’t need _______.
11. I went out to buy _______ oranges, but they didn’t have _______ at the store.
12. I’m thirsty. Can I have _______ water, please?

Complete the sentences. Use some or any + the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>batteries</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>fruit</th>
<th>help</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>languages</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>pictures</td>
<td>questions</td>
<td>shampoo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there any shampoo?
2. The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you _____________________.
3. I don’t have my camera, so I can’t take _____________________.
4. Do you speak ____________________ foreign languages?
5. Last night I went to a restaurant with ______________________ of mine.
6. Can I have ____________________ in my coffee, please?
7. This camera isn’t working. There aren’t ____________________ in it.
8. It’s hot in this office. I’m going out for _________________________ fresh milk.
9. A: Would you like _________________________?
   B: No, thank you. I’ve had enough to eat.
10. I can do this job alone. I don’t need ________________________.

Complete the sentences. Use some or any.

1. Jane didn’t take any pictures, but ______ took some. (I / take)
2. “Where’s your luggage?” “I don’t have any.” (I / not / have)
3. “Do you need any money?” “No, thank you.” (I / have)
4. “Can you lend me some money?” “I’m sorry, but ______.” (I / not / have)
5. The tomatoes at the store didn’t look very good, so ______. (I / not / buy)
6. There were some nice oranges at the store, so _______. (I / buy)
7. “How many phone calls did you make yesterday?” “______.” (I / not / make)

Write something/somebody or anything/anybody.

1. A woman stopped me and said ______, but I didn’t understand.
2. “What’s wrong?” “There’s ______ in my eye.”
3. Do you know ______ about politics?
4. I went to the store, but I didn’t buy ____________.
5. ____________ broke the window. I don’t know who.
6. There isn’t ______ in the bag. It’s empty.
7. I’m looking for my keys. Has ______ seen them?
8. Would you like _______ to drink?
9. I didn’t eat _______ because I wasn’t hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don’t tell _______.

10
not + any  no  none

not (-n't) + any
- There aren't any cars in the parking lot.
- Tracey and Jeff don't have any children.
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garage, etc.)
no . . . = not any or not a
- There are no cars in the parking lot. (= there aren't any cars)
- We have no coffee. (= we don't have any coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's no garage. (= there isn't a garage)

We use no . . . especially after have/has and there is/are.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no
- They don't have any children. or They have no children.
  (not They don't have no children)
- There isn't any sugar in your coffee. or There's no sugar in your coffee.

No and none
Use no + noun (no money / no children, etc.):
- We have no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):
- "How much money do you have?"  "None." (= no money)
- "Were there any problems?"  "No, none." (= no problems)

None and no one

none = 0 (zero)
no one = nobody

None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people):
- "How much money do you have?"  "None." (= no money)
- "How many people did you meet?"  "None." (= no people)

No one is an answer for Who?:
- "Who did you meet?"  "No one."  or  "Nobody."
Exercises

78.1 Write these sentences again with no.
1. We don't have any money. We have no money.
2. There aren't any stores near here. There are ____________________
3. Carla doesn't have any free time. ____________________________
4. There isn't a light in this room. ____________________________

Write these sentences again with any.
5. We have no money. We don't have any money.
6. There's no milk in the fridge. ____________________________
7. There are no buses today. ____________________________
8. Tom has no brothers or sisters. ____________________________

78.2 Write no or any.
1. There's ______ sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he doesn't have ______ children.
3. Sue doesn't speak ______ foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's ______ coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. “Look at those birds!” “Birds? Where? I can't see ______ birds.”
6. “Do you know where Jessica is?” “No, I have ______ idea.”

Write no, any, or none.
7. There aren't ______ pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was ______ wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have ______ at the store.
10. Everything was correct. There were ______ mistakes.
11. “How much luggage do you have?” “______.”
12. “How much luggage do you have?” “I don't have ______.”

78.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air conditioning</th>
<th>answer</th>
<th>difference</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>furniture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

line
money
problems

1. Everything was OK. There were _______ problems.
2. Jack and Emily would like to take a vacation, but they have __________________________.
3. I'm not going to answer __________________________.
4. He's always alone. He has __________________________.
5. There is __________________________ between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't __________________________ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to call you yesterday, but there was __________________________.
8. The house is hot because there isn't __________________________.
9. There was __________________________ outside the movie theater, so we didn't have to wait to get our tickets.

78.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.
1. How many letters did you write yesterday? ________ OR ________ OR ________
2. How many sisters do you have?
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
4. How many pictures have you taken today?
5. How many legs does a snake have? _______
not + anybody/anyone/anything
nobody/no one
(for people)

- There isn't anybody in the room.
- There is nobody in the room.
- A: Who is in the room?  
  B: Nobody./No one.

-body and -one are the same:
  anybody = anyone  
nobody = no one

not + anything
nothing
(for things)

- There isn't anything in the bag.
- There is nothing in the bag.
- A: What’s in the bag?  
  B: Nothing.

not + anybody/anyone

- I don't know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybody
no one = not + anyone

- I'm lonely. I have nobody to talk to. (= I don't have anybody)
- The house is empty. There is no one in it. (= There isn't anyone in it.)

not + anything

nothing = not + anything

- She said nothing. (= She didn’t say anything.)
- There's nothing to eat. (= There isn't anything to eat.)

You can use nobody/no one/nothing at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. Nobody lives there. (not Anybody lives there)
- “Who did you speak to?” “No one.”

- Nothing happened. (not Anything happened)
- “What did you say?” “Nothing.”

Remember:

negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything
positive verb + nobody/no one/nothing

- He doesn’t know anything. (not He doesn’t know nothing)
- Don’t tell anybody. (not Don’t tell nobody)
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not There isn’t nothing)
Exercises

7.1 Write these sentences again with nobody / no one or nothing.
1. There isn’t anything in the bag. There’s nothing in the bag.
2. There isn’t anybody in the office. There’s no one in the office.
3. I don’t have anything to do. I have nothing to do.
4. There isn’t anything on TV. There’s nothing on TV.
5. There wasn’t anyone at home. There’s no one at home.
6. We didn’t find anything. We didn’t find nothing.

7.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.
1. There’s nothing in the bag.
2. There wasn’t nobody on the bus.
3. I have nothing to read.
4. I have no one to help me.
5. She heard nothing.
6. We have nothing for dinner.

7.3 Answer these questions with nobody / no one or nothing.
3a. What do you want? Anything.
4a. Who did you meet? Anyone.
5a. Who knows the answer? Anyone.
6a. What did you buy? Anything.
8a. Who was late? Nobody.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use nobody / no one / nothing or anybody/anyone/anything:
1b. I didn’t say anything.
2b. Nobody saw me.
3b. I don’t know.
4b. I don’t know.
5b. I didn’t buy anything.
6b. I didn’t do anything.
7b. She wasn’t with anyone.
8b. I didn’t know anyone.

7.4 Complete the sentences. Use: nobody / no one / nothing or anybody/anyone/anything
1. That house is empty. Nobody lives there.
2. Jack has a bad memory. He can’t remember anything.
3. Be quiet! Don’t say anything.
4. I didn’t know about the meeting. Someone told me.
5. “What did you have to eat?” “Anything. I wasn’t hungry.”
6. I didn’t eat anything. I wasn’t hungry.
7. Helen was sitting alone. She wasn’t with anyone.
8. I’m sorry, I can’t help you. There’s anything I can do.
9. I don’t know anything about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn’t cost anything to go in.
11. I heard a knock at the door, but when I opened it, there was nothing there.
12. Antonio spoke very fast. I didn’t understand anything.
14. Helen is out of town. Anyone knows where she is. She didn’t tell anyone where she was going.
somewhere/anything/nowhere, etc.

**People (-body or -one)**

- **somebody** or **someone** = a person, but we don’t know who
- **anybody** or **anyone**
- **nobody** or **no one**

- **somewhere** = in/to a place, but we don’t know where

**Things (-thing)**

- **something**
- **anything**
- **nothing**

**Places (-where)**

- **somewhere**
- **anywhere**
- **nowhere**

**somewhere/anything, etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting, etc.)**

- Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.
- “What's in that letter?” “It's **nothing important**.”

**something/anything, etc. + to . . .**

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

---

**Notes:**

- **somebody** or **someone**
- **anybody** or **anyone**
- **nobody** or **no one**
- **something**
- **anything**
- **nothing**
- **somewhere**
- **anywhere**
- **nowhere**

**Usage:**

- **somebody** or **someone**
- **anybody** or **anyone**
- **nobody** or **no one**
- **something**
- **anything**
- **nothing**
- **somewhere**
- **anywhere**
- **nowhere**

**Examples:**

- Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.
- Are you doing **anything** this weekend?
- I was angry, but I didn't say **anything**.
- “What did you say?” “**Nothing**.”
- Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in Southern California.
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting on vacation?
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.
Exercises

1. Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

1. Lucy said ___________.
2. I lost ___________.
3. Sue and Tom went ___________.
4. I'm going to call ___________.

What did she say?
What did you lose?
Where did they go?
Who are you going to call?

2. Write nobody (or no one) / nothing / nowhere.

1a. What did you say?
2a. Where are you going?
3a. What do you want?
4a. Who are you looking for?

Nothing

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.

1b. I didn't say anything.
2b. I'm not ________________________________
3b. ________________________________
4b. ________________________________

3. Write somebody/anything/nowhere, etc.

1. It's dark. I can't see ___________.
2. Tom lives ___________ near San Francisco.
3. Do you know ___________ about computers?
4. "Listen!" "What? I can't hear ___________."
5. "What are you doing here?" "I'm waiting for ___________.
6. We need to talk. There's ___________ I want to tell you.
7. "Did ___________ see the accident?" "No, ___________."
8. We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat ___________.
9. "What's going to happen?" "I don't know. ___________ knows.
10. "Do you know ___________ in Tokyo?" "Yes, a few people.
11. "What's in that suitcase?" "_________________. It's empty."
12. I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them ___________.
13. I don't like cold weather. I want to live ___________ warm.
14. Is there ___________ interesting on television tonight?
15. Have you ever met ___________ famous?

30.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>something</th>
<th>anything</th>
<th>nothing</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>drink</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>go</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>park</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>stay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. We don't go out very much because there's ___________.
2. There isn't any food in the house. We don't have ___________.
3. I'm bored. I have ___________.
4. "Why are you standing?" "Because there isn't ___________."
5. "Would you like ___________?" "Yes, please - a glass of water."
6. If you're going downtown, take the bus. Don't drive because there's ___________.
7. I want ___________. I'm going to buy a magazine.
8. I need ___________ in Seoul. Can you recommend a hotel?
**every and all**

### Every

- **Every house on the street is the same.**
- **Every house on the street = all the houses on the street**

We use **every + singular noun** (every house / every country, etc.):
- Sarah has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we take a vacation at the beach.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a **singular verb after every . . .**:
- **Every house on the street** is the same. (not are the same)
- **Every country** has a national flag. (not have)

Compare **every** and **all**:
- **Every student** in the class passed the exam.
- **Every country** has a national flag.
- **All the students** in the class passed the exam.
- **All countries** have a national flag.

### Every day and all day

- **every day** = on all days:
  - **How often?**
  - It rained **every day** last week.
  - Bill watches TV for about two hours **every night**. (= on all nights)
  - *also every morning/week/summer, etc.*
- **all day** = the complete day:
  - **How long?**
  - It rained **all day** yesterday.
  - On Monday, I watched TV **all night**. (= the whole night)
  - *also all morning/week/summer, etc.*

### Everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

- **everybody** (or **everyone**) (people)
- **everything** (things)
- **everywhere** (places)

- **Everybody** (or **Everyone**) needs friends.
  (= all people need friends)
- **Do you have everything** you need?
  (= all the things you need)
- **I lost my watch. I've looked everywhere for it.**
  (= I've looked in all places)

Use a **singular verb after everybody/everyone/everything**:
- **Everybody** **has** problems. (not Everybody have)
Exercises

1. Complete the sentences. Use every + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>day</th>
<th>room</th>
<th>student</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Every student in the class passed the exam.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My job is very boring. is the same.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate is a very good chess player. When we play, she wins .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the hotel has a TV.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Did you understand what she said?” “Most of it, but not .”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>every day</th>
<th>all day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yesterday it rained .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I buy a newspaper , but sometimes I don't read it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I usually drink about four cups of coffee .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paula was sick yesterday, so she stayed in bed .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired now because I've been working hard .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last year we went to the beach for a week, and it rained .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Write every or all.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>every</th>
<th>all</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill watches TV for about two hours .</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julia gets up at 6:30 morning.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside afternoon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm leaving town on Monday. I'll be away week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“How often do you go skiing?” “ year. Usually in March.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Were you at home morning. I went out after lunch.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My sister loves new cars. She buys one year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We take a vacation for two or three weeks summer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Write everybody/everything/everywhere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>everybody</th>
<th>everywhere</th>
<th>everything</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Everybody needs friends.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris knows about computers.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like the people here, is very friendly.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable, and is very clean.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kevin never uses his car. He goes on his motorcycle.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let's have dinner. is hungry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sue's house is full of books. There are books .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are right. you say is true.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>has</th>
<th>every</th>
<th>all</th>
<th>change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Everybody has problems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you ready yet? Everybody waiting for you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The house is empty. Everyone gone out.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gary is very popular. Everybody him.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This town is completely different now. Everything changed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone asleep.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Everybody mistakes!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: everything clear? everybody know what to do?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: Yes, we all understand.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Unit 82**

**All** / most / some / any / no / none

**Compare:**
- **children/money/books,** etc. (in general):
  - Children like to play. (= children in general)
  - Money isn't everything. (= money in general)
  - I enjoy reading books.
  - Everybody needs friends.
- **the children / the money / these books,** etc:
  - Where are the children? (= our children)
  - I want to buy a car, but I don't have the money. (= the money for a car)
  - Have you read these books?
  - I often go out with my friends.

**Most / most of . . . , some / some of . . . , etc.**

- Most children like to play.
  (= children in general)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He has no friends.
- All cities have the same problems.
  (= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:
- Most people drive too fast.
  (not Most of people)
- Some birds can't fly.
  (not Some of birds)

**most/some, etc. + noun**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cities</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>books</td>
<td>money</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

You can say **all** the . . . or **all of** the . . . (with or without **of**):
- All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students . . .)
- Silvia has lived in Miami all her life. (or . . . all of her life.)

**All of it / most of them / none of us,** etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You can have some of this cake, but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?  
  B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books, but I haven't read any of them.
- "How many of these books have you read?"  "None of them."
Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses (*some/most*, etc.). Sometimes you need of (*some of / most of*, etc.).

1. *Most* children like to play. (*most*)
2. *Some of* this money is yours. (*some*)
3. *Some* people never stop talking. (*some*)
4. *Most* the stores downtown close at 6:00. (*most*)
5. You can change money in *most* banks. (*most*)
6. I don't like *any* the pictures in the living room. (*any*)
7. He's lost *all* his money. (*all*)
8. *Most* of my friends are married. (*none*)
9. Do you know *any* the people in this picture? (*any*)
10. *Most* birds can fly. (*most*)
11. I enjoyed *most* the movie, but I didn't like the ending. (*most*)
12. *Some* sports are very dangerous. (*some*)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. *All* the hotels are full. (*all*)
14. Try *some* this cheese. It's delicious. (*some*)
15. The weather was bad when we were on vacation. It rained *all* the time. (*most*)

Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

- *all / most / some / none + of them / of it*

1. How many of the people are women? *Most of them*
2. How many of the boxes are on the table? __________________________
3. How many of the men are wearing hats? __________________________
4. How many of the windows are open? __________________________
5. How many of the people are standing? __________________________
6. How much of the money is Ben's? __________________________

Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. *Most of children* like to play. *Most children*
2. All the students failed the test. __________________________
3. Some of people work too hard. __________________________
4. Some of questions on the exam were very easy. __________________________
5. I haven't seen any of those people before. __________________________
6. All of insects have six legs. __________________________
7. Have you read all these books? __________________________
8. Most of students in our class are very nice. __________________________
9. Most of my friends are going to the party. __________________________
10. I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. __________________________
We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people:

- **both**
- **either**
- **neither (not + either)**

Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (both = the two children)

Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (either = tea or coffee)

A: Do you want to go to the movies or the theater?  
B: **Neither**. I want to stay home. (neither = not the movies or the theater)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

- "Would you like **tea** or **coffee**?"  
  "**Either**. It doesn't matter." (= tea or coffee)

- "**I don't want either**." (not I don't want neither)
  "**Neither**." (= not tea or coffee)

**Both/either/neither + noun**

- **both** + plural: both windows/books/children, etc.
- **either** + singular: either window/book/child, etc.
- **neither** + singular: neither window/book/child, etc.

- Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked both cities very much.
- First I worked in an office and later in a store. Neither job was very interesting.
- There are two ways to get to the airport. You can go either way.

**Both of... / either of... / neither of...**

- **both (of) the...**
- **either of these/those/my...**
- **neither of these/those/my...**

- Neither of my parents is Canadian.
- I haven't read either of these books.

You can say both of the/those/my... or both the/those/my... (with or without of):

- I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- Both of Paul's sisters are married. or Both Paul's sisters are married.

  but Neither of Paul's sisters is married. (not Neither Paul's sisters)

- **Both of them / neither of us**

- Paul has got two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know either of them.
Exercises

83.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked __both__ cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like __either of__ them.
3. It was a good football game. ____________ teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football game. ____________ team played well.
5. "Is your friend Canadian or American?" ____________ . She's Australian.
6. We went away for two days, but the weather was bad. It rained ____________ days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   B: ____________ . It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Donna and Mike to the party, but ____________ them came.
9. "Do you go to work by car or by bus?" ____________ . I always walk.
10. "Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?" ____________ them.
11. "Do you work or are you a student?" ____________ . I work, and I'm a student, too.
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because ____________ us had a watch.
13. Helen has two sisters and a brother. ____________ sisters are married.
14. Helen has two sisters and a brother. I know her brother, but I haven't met ____________ her sisters.

83.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both . . . and Neither . . . .

1. __Both cups are__ empty.
2. ____________ are open.
3. ____________ wearing a hat.
4. ____________ beards.
5. ____________ to the airport.
6. ____________ right.

83.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them . . . .

1. Are you married? No No 1. __Neither of them is married__ .
2. How old are you? 21 21 2. __Both of them are 21__ .
3. Are you a student? Yes Yes 3. __Both of them are students__ .
4. Do you have a car? No No 4. ____ a car__ .
6. Do you like to cook? Yes Yes 6. ____________ .
7. Can you play the piano? No No 7. ____________ .
8. Do you read the newspaper? Yes Yes 8. ____________ .
### a lot  much  many

#### We use much + uncountable noun
(much food / much money, etc.):
- Did you buy much food?
- We don’t have much luggage.
- How much money do you want?
- A: Do you have any money?  
  B: I have some, but not much.

#### We use many + plural noun
(many books / many people, etc.):
- Did you buy many books?
- We don’t know many people.
- How many photos did you take?
- A: Did you take any photos?  
  B: I took some, but not many.

#### We use a lot of + both types of noun:
- We bought a lot of food.
- Paula doesn’t have a lot of free time.

We say:
- There is a lot of food/money/water . . . (singular verb)

#### We use much in questions and negative sentences:
- Do you drink much coffee?
- I don’t drink much coffee.

But we do not often use much in positive sentences:
- I drink a lot of coffee.  (*not* I drink much coffee)
- “Do you drink much coffee?”  “Yes, a lot.”  (*not* Yes, much)

We use many and a lot of in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):
- We have many friends / a lot of friends.
- We don’t have many friends / a lot of friends.
- Do you have many friends / a lot of friends?

#### You can use much and a lot without a noun:
- Donna spoke to me, but she didn’t say much.
- “Do you watch TV much?”  “No, not much.”  (*= not often*)
- We like movies, so we go to the movies a lot.  (*not* go to the movies much)
- I don’t like him very much.
4.1 Write much or many.
1. Did you buy much food?
2. There aren’t ________ hotels in this town.
3. We don’t have ________ gas. We need to stop and get some.
4. Were there ________ people on the train?
5. Did ________ students fail the exam?
6. Paula doesn’t have ________ money.
7. I wasn’t hungry, so I didn’t eat ________.
8. I don’t know where Gary lives these days. I haven’t seen him for ________ years.

Write How much or How many.
9. _________________________ people are coming to the party?
10. _________________________ milk should I get at the store?
11. _________________________ bread did you buy?
12. _________________________ players are there on a football team?

4.2 Complete the sentences. Use much or many with these words:
books countries luggage people time times
1. I don’t read very much. I don’t have _________ books.
2. Hurry up! We don’t have ____________________________.
3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to ____________________________?
4. Tina hasn’t lived here very long, so she doesn’t know ____________________________.
5. “Do you have ____________________________?” “No, only this bag.”
6. I know Tokyo very well. I’ve been there ________________________________.

4.3 Complete the sentences. Use a lot of + these words:
accidents books fun interesting things traffic
1. I like reading. I have _________ books.
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw ____________________________.
3. This road is very dangerous. There are ____________________________.
4. We enjoyed our vacation. We had ____________________________.
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was ____________________________.

4.4 In some of these sentences much is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.
1. Do you drink much coffee?
2. I drink much tea.
3. It was a cold winter. We had much snow.
4. There wasn’t much snow last winter.
5. It costs much money to travel around the world.
6. This pen was cheap. It didn’t cost much.
7. Do you know much about computers?
8. “Do you have any luggage?” “Yes, much.”

4.5 Write sentences about these people. Use much and a lot.
1. Jim loves movies. (go to the movies) ___________ He goes to the movies a lot.
2. Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) ___________ She doesn’t watch TV much.
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) ___________ She ____________________________.
4. Martin doesn’t like to drive. (use his car) ___________ He ____________________________.
5. Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out) ___________ He ____________________________.
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel) ___________ She ____________________________.
**UNIT 85**

(a) **little** + uncountable noun:
- (a) little water
- (a) little time
- (a) little money
- (a) little soup

(a) **few** + plural noun:
- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days

**B**

**A little** = some but not much
- She didn't eat anything, but she drank a little water.
- I speak a little Spanish.
  (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?
  B: A little.

**A few** = some but not many
- Excuse me, I have to make a few phone calls.
- We're going away for a few days.
- I speak a few words of Spanish.
  A: Do you have any stamps?
  B: Yes, a few. Do you want one?

**C**

**little** (without a) = almost no or almost nothing
- There was little food in the fridge. It was almost empty.

You can say **very little**:
- Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= almost nothing)

**few** (without a) = almost no
- There were few people in the theater.
  It was almost empty.

You can say **very few**:
- Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.

**D**

**little** and **a little**
- A little is a positive idea:
  - They have a little money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)
- Little (or very little) is a negative idea:
  - They have (very) little money. They are very poor. (= almost no money)

**few** and **a few**
- A few is a positive idea:
  - I have a few friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I have some friends)
- Few (or very few) is a negative idea:
  - I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have (very) few friends. (= almost no friends)

I have a little money.
I have little money.
I have a few friends.
I have few friends.
Exercises

85.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.
1. “Do you have any money?” “Yes, a little.”
2. “Do you have any envelopes?” “Yes, a few.”
3. “Do you want sugar in your coffee?” “Yes, a little, please.”
4. “Did you take any pictures when you were on vacation?” “Yes, a few.”
5. “Does your friend speak English?” “Yes, a little.”
6. “Are there any good restaurants in this town?” “Yes, a few.”

85.2 Write a little or a few + these words:
chairs days fresh air friends milk Russian times years
1. Martin speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years.
2. Can I have fresh air in my coffee, please?
3. “When did Julia leave?” “A few minutes ago.”
4. “Do you speak any foreign languages?” “I can speak Russian.”
5. “Are you going out alone?” “No, I’m going with friends.”
6. “Have you ever been to Mexico?” “Yes, a few times.”
7. There wasn’t much furniture in the room – just a table and a few chairs.
8. I’m going out for a walk. I need some fresh air.

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + these words:
coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work
1. Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2. I drink coffee. I don’t like it.
3. The weather here is very dry in summer. There is very little rain.
4. It’s difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are very few hotels.
5. Hurry up. We’ve got very little time.
6. The town is very quiet at night. They don’t go out.
7. Some people in the office are very lazy. They do very little work.

85.4 Write little / a little or few / a few.
1. There was little food in the fridge. It was almost empty.
2. “When did Sarah go out?” “A few minutes ago.”
3. I can’t decide now. I need some time to think about it.
4. There was very little traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5. The bus service isn’t very good at night – there are very few buses after 9:00.
6. “Would you like some soup?” “Yes, a little, please.”
7. They sent us a map, so we had no trouble finding their house.

85.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.
1. We’re going away for few days next week. for a few days
2. Everybody needs little luck.
3. I can’t talk to you now – I’ve got few things to do.
4. I eat very little meat – I don’t like it very much.
5. Excuse me, can I ask you few questions?
6. There were little people on the bus – it was almost empty.
7. Martin is a very private person. Few people know him well.
UNIT 86

old/nice/interesting, etc. (adjectives)

Adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes, etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective + noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's a nice day today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laura has brown eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's a very old church in this town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like Italian food?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't speak any foreign languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are some beautiful yellow flowers in the garden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The adjective is before the noun:
- They live in a modern house. (not a house modern)
- Have you met any famous people? (not people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:
- a different place different places (not differents)

Be (am/is/was, etc.) + adjective

- The weather is nice today.
- These flowers are very beautiful.
- Are you cold? Should I close the window?
- I'm hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- The movie wasn't very good. It was boring.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.

Look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective

- You look tired. "Yes, I feel tired."
- Gary told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn’t smell good.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He is feels</th>
<th>looks</th>
<th>They are</th>
<th>look</th>
<th>happy.</th>
<th>It is</th>
<th>smells</th>
<th>tastes</th>
<th>good.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tired.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Put the words in the right order.

1. (new / live in / house / they / a)
   They live in a new house.

2. (like / jacket / I / that / green)
   I like that green jacket.

3. (music / like / do / classical / you?)
   Do you like classical music?

4. (had / wonderful / a / I / trip)
   I had a wonderful trip.

5. (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we)
   We went to a Japanese restaurant.

The words below are adjectives (dark/foreign, etc.) or nouns (air/job, etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air  dangerous  foreign  hot  knife  long  vacation  clouds  dark  fresh  job  languages  sharp  water

1. Do you speak any ____________ languages?
   foreign

2. Look at those _______________________________. It's going to rain.
   clouds

3. Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a ________________________________.
   vacation

4. You need ________________________________ to make tea.
   knife

5. Can you open the window? We need some ________________________________.
   air

6. I need a ________________________________ to cut these onions.
   knife

7. Firefighting is a ________________________________.
   job

Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s)  look(s)  sound(s)  happy  nice  surprised
look(s)  smell(s)  taste(s)  new  sick  terrible

1. You ________________________________.
   sound happy

2. It

3. ________________________________

4. You

5. They___________________________.

6. It ________________________________.

A and B don’t agree. Complete B’s sentences. Use feel/look, etc.

1. You look tired.
   I do? I ________________________________.
   feel tired

2. This is a new coat.
   It is? It doesn’t ________________________________.
   look

3. I’m American.
   You are? You ________________________________.
   sound

4. You look cold.
   Really? I ________________________________.
   feel

5. These bags are heavy.
   They are? They ________________________________.
   look

6. That soup looks good.
   Maybe, but it ________________________________.
   taste
Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

**adjective + -ly → adverb:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>quick</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>sudden</th>
<th>careful</th>
<th>heavy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For spelling, see Appendix 5. easy → easily heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:

- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>Sue is very quiet.</th>
<th>Be careful!</th>
<th>It was a bad game.</th>
<th>I felt nervous. (= I was nervous)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>Sue speaks very quietly. (not speaks very quiet)</td>
<td>Listen carefully! (not listen careful)</td>
<td>Our team played badly. (not played bad)</td>
<td>I waited nervously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hard fast late early**

These words are adjectives and adverbs:

- Sue’s job is very hard.
- Ben is a fast runner.
- The bus was late/early.

**Good (adjective) → well (adverb)**

- Your English is very good.
- It was a good game.

- You speak English very well. (not very good)
- Our team played well.

But well is also an adjective (= not sick, in good health):

- “How are you?” “I’m very well, thank you. And you?”
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily  badly  dangerously  fast  heavily  quietly

1. It's raining _______.
2. He sings very _______.
3. They came in _______.
4. She shouted at me _______.
5. She can run very _______.
6. He was driving _______.

Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come  explain  know  listen  sleep  think  win  work

carefully  clearly  hard  well

easily  quickly

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please _______.
2. They ______________________________. At the end of the day they're always tired.
3. I'm tired this morning. I didn't ______________________________ last night.
4. You play chess much better than me. When we play, you always ____________
5. ______________________________ before you answer the question.
6. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't ________________ her very ______________
7. Our teacher doesn't _________________ things very _________________. We never
understand him.
8. Helen! I need your help. ______________________________ !

Which is right?

1. Don't eat so quick / quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
2. Why are you angry / angrily? I didn't do anything.
3. Can you speak slow / slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow / slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful / carefully driver.
6. Jane is studying hard / hardly for her exams.
7. “Where's Diane?” “She was here, but she left sudden / suddenly.”
8. Please be quiet / quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad / badly.
10. Those oranges look nice / nicely. Can I have one?
11. I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick / quickly.

Write good or well.

1. Your English is very _______. You speak it very _______.
2. Jackie did very ____________ on the quiz today.
3. The party was very ____________. I enjoyed it a lot.
4. Martin has a difficult job, but he does it ____________.
5. How are your parents? Are they ____________?
6. Did you have a ____________ vacation? Was the weather ____________?
Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms.
The comparative is -er (older) or more . . . (more expensive).

Older/heavier, etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → -er:
old → older  slow → slower  cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer  late → later  big → bigger

For spelling, see Appendix 5.  big → bigger  hot → hotter  thin → thinner

Words ending in -y → -ier:
easy → easier  heavy → heavier  early → earlier

Rome is old, but Athens is older. (not more old)
Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not more cheap)
Helen wants a bigger car.
This coat is OK, but I think the other one is nicer.
Don't take the bus. It's easier to take a taxi. (not more easy)

Far → farther:
“How far is it to the station? A mile?” “No, it's farther. About two miles.”

More . . .

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → more . . . :
careful → more careful  polite → more polite
expensive → more expensive  interesting → more interesting

You should be more careful.
I don’t like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

Good/well → better  bad → worse

The weather wasn’t very good yesterday, but it’s better today.
“Do you feel better today?” “No, I feel worse.”
Which is worse – a headache or a toothache?
1. heavy
2. big
3. slow
4. expensive
5. high
6. dangerous

1. old ___________________________ 6. good ___________________________
2. strong ___________________________
3. happy ___________________________
4. modern ___________________________
5. important ___________________________

1. younger ___________________________
2. colder ___________________________
3. cheaper ___________________________

1. Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a _______ one.
2. My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something _______
3. You're not very tall. Your brother is ____________.
4. David doesn't work very hard. I work _______
5. My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is _______
6. Your idea isn't very good. My idea is _______
7. These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are _______
8. My suitcase isn't very heavy. Your suitcase is _______
9. I'm not very interested in art. I'm _______ in history.
10. It isn't very warm today. It was _______ yesterday.
11. These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted _______
12. Peru isn't very big. Brazil is _______
13. Los Angeles isn't very beautiful. San Francisco is _______
14. This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a _______ one?
15. People today aren't very polite. In the past they were _______
16. The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much _______.
older than . . . more expensive than . . .

We use *than* after comparatives (older than . . . / more expensive than . . ., etc.):
- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It’s easier to take a taxi *than* to take the bus.
- “How are you today?” “Not bad. Better *than* yesterday.”
- The restaurant is more crowded *than* usual.

We usually say: *than* me / *than* him / *than* her / *than* us / *than* them.

You can say:
- I can run faster *than* him. *or* I can run faster *than* he can.
- You are a better singer *than* me. *or* You are a better singer *than* I am.
- I got up earlier *than* her. *or* I got up earlier *than* she did.

More/less than . . .

- A: How much did your shoes cost? Fifty dollars?
  B: No, *more* than that. (= more than $50)
- The movie was very short – *less* than an hour.
- They’ve got *more* money *than* they need.
- You go out *more* than me.

A little older / much older, etc.

Box A is a little bigger *than* Box B.
Box C is much bigger *than* Box D.

- Canada is much bigger *than* France.
- Sue is a little older *than* Gary – she’s 25 and he’s 24.
- The hotel was much more expensive *than* I expected.
- You go out much more *than* me.
1. Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

1. I'm 26.
2. I'm not a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet 10 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8:00.
5. I don't work very hard.
6. I don't have much money.
7. I'm a very good driver.
8. I'm not very patient.
9. I'm not a very good dancer.
10. I'm very intelligent.
11. I speak Spanish very well.
12. I don't go to the movies very much.

Liz is older than Ben.

1. Liz is a better swimmer than Liz.
2. Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.
3. Liz starts before Ben.
4. Ben has more money than Liz.

2. Complete the sentences. Use than.

1. He isn't very tall. You're taller than him. OR taller than he is.
2. She isn't very old. You're .
3. I don't work very hard. You work .
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You .
5. I'm not a very good cook. You .
6. We don't know many people. You .
7. They don't have much money. You .
8. I can't run very fast. You .
9. She hasn't been here very long. You .
10. They didn't get up very early. You .
11. He wasn't very surprised. You .

3. Complete the sentences with a little or much + comparative (older/better, etc.).

1. Emma is 18 months old. Gary is 16 months old.
   Emma is a little older than Gary.
2. Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
   Jack's mother.
3. My camera cost $100. Yours cost $96.
   My camera.
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
   I feel .
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees Celsius. Yesterday it was 10 degrees Celsius.
   It's .
6. Sarah is an excellent volleyball player. I'm not very good.
   Sarah .
Not as . . . as

Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older)
The Grand Hotel isn’t as expensive as the Western. (= the Western is more expensive)
I don’t play soccer as often as you. (= you play more often)
The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn’t as cold. (= as cold as it was yesterday)

Not as much as . . . / not as many as . . .
I don’t have as much money as you. (= you have more money)
I don’t know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
I don’t go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

Compare not as . . . as and than:
Rome is not as old as Athens.
Athens is older than Rome. (not older as Rome)
Tennis isn’t as popular as soccer.
Soccer is more popular than tennis.
I don’t go out as much as you.
You go out more than me.

We usually say: as me / as him / as her, etc.
You can say:
She’s not as old as him. or She’s not as old as he is.
You don’t work as hard as me. or You don’t work as hard as I do.

We say the same as . . .:
The weather today is the same as yesterday.
My hair is the same color as yours.
I arrived at the same time as Tim.
**Exercises**

### Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B, and C.

1. A is **bigger than C, but not as big as B**
2. A is ____________ B, but not ____________ C.
3. C is ____________ A, but ____________ B.
4. A is ____________ B, but not ____________ C.
5. B has ____________ C.
6. C works ____________ A, but ____________ B.

### 50.2 Write sentences with *as . . . as*.

1. Athens is older than Rome. **Rome isn’t as old as Athens**
2. My room is bigger than yours. **Your room isn’t as big as mine**
3. You got up earlier than me. **I didn’t get up as early as you.**
4. We played better than them. **They didn’t play as well as us.**
5. I’ve been here longer than you. **You’ve been here longer than me.**
6. She’s more nervous than him. **He isn’t as nervous as she is.**

### 50.3 Write as or than.

1. Athens is older **than** Rome.
2. I don’t watch TV as much **as** you.
3. You eat more **than** me.
4. I’m more tired today **than** I was yesterday.
5. Joe isn’t as intelligent **as** he thinks.
6. Belgium is smaller **than** Switzerland.
7. Brazil isn’t as big **as** Canada.
8. I can’t wait more **than** an hour.

### 50.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy, and Laura. Use the same age / the same street, etc.

**Julia**
- I’m 22.
- I live on Hill Street.
- I got up at 7:15.
- I don’t have a car.

**Andy**
- I’m 24.
- I live on Baker Street.
- I got up at 7:15.
- My car is dark blue.

**Laura**
- I’m 24.
- I live on Hill Street.
- I got up at 7:45.
- I have a car. It’s dark blue.

1. (age) **Andy is the same age as Laura**
2. (street) **Julia lives the same street as Laura**
3. (time) **Julia got up the same time as Laura**
4. (color) **Andy’s car is the same color as Laura’s**
UNIT 91

the oldest  the most expensive

MOTEL PRICES IN
JAMESTOWN
[Per room per night]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motel</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Best West Motel</td>
<td>$135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep Inn</td>
<td>$105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rainbow Motel</td>
<td>$95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak Tree Motel</td>
<td>$85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cozy Cabins</td>
<td>$60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lake View Inn</td>
<td>$50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Box A is bigger than Box B.

Box A is bigger than all the other boxes.

Box A is the biggest box.

The Best West Motel is more expensive than the Sleep Inn.

The Best West Motel is more expensive than all the other motels in town.

The Best West Motel is the most expensive motel in town.

Bigger / older / more expensive, etc. are comparative forms (→ Unit 88).

Biggest / oldest / most expensive, etc. are superlative forms.

The superlative form is -est (oldest) or most . . . (most expensive).

Short words (old/cheap/nice, etc.) → the -est:
- old → the oldest
- cheap → the cheapest
- nice → the nicest

but
- good → the best
- bad → the worst

For spelling see Appendix 5.

Big → the biggest
- big → the biggest
- hot → the hottest

Words ending in -y (easy/heavy, etc.) → the -iest:
- easy → the easiest
- heavy → the heaviest
- pretty → the prettiest

Long words (careful/expensive/interesting, etc.) → the most . . .:
- careful → the most careful
- interesting → the most interesting

We say the oldest . . . / the most expensive . . ., etc. (with the):
- The church is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
  (= it is older than all the other buildings)
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't the most important thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

You can use the oldest / the best / the most expensive, etc. without a noun:
- Ken is a good player, but he isn't the best on the team.
  (the best = the best player)

You can use superlative + I've ever . . . / you've ever . . ., etc.:
- The movie was very bad. I think it's the worst movie I've ever seen.
- What is the most unusual thing you've ever done?
31.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older, etc.) and superlatives (the oldest, etc.).

1. Write sentences with comparatives (older, etc.) and superlatives (the oldest, etc.).

2. Write sentences with comparatives (older, etc.) and superlatives (the oldest, etc.).

3. Write sentences with comparatives (older, etc.) and superlatives (the oldest, etc.).

4. Write sentences with comparatives (older, etc.) and superlatives (the oldest, etc.).

5. Write sentences with comparatives (older, etc.) and superlatives (the oldest, etc.).

31.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest, etc.).

1. This building is very old. It’s the oldest building in town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was _______ of my life.
3. It’s a very good movie. It’s _______ I’ve ever seen.
4. She’s a very popular singer. She’s _______ in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was _______ I’ve ever made.
6. It’s a very pretty city. It’s _______ I’ve ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was _______ of the year.
8. He’s a very boring person. He’s _______ I’ve ever met.

31.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest, etc.). Choose from the boxes.

- Sydney - Alaska - Everest - the Nile - Brazil - Jupiter
- high - large - country - river - state
- city - mountain - planet - Africa - South America
- Australia - the United States - the world - the solar system

1. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2. Everest _______.
3. _______.
4. _______.
5. _______.
6. _______.
enough

I only have two dollars — not enough for a taxi.

She isn't going to take a taxi.
She doesn't have enough money.

He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't tall enough.

I've got some money, but not enough to buy a car.

"Is there enough salt in the soup?" “Yes, it's fine.”
We wanted to play football, but we didn't have enough players.
Why don't you buy a car? You've got enough money. (not money enough)

I've got some money, but not enough to buy a car.

"Would you like some more to eat?" “No, thanks. I've had enough.”
You're always at home. You don't go out enough.

"Do you want to go swimming?" “No, it isn't warm enough.” (not enough warm)
Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't long enough. (= it's too short)

Remember:
enough + noun but adjective + enough

enough money tall enough
enough time good enough
enough people old enough

We say:
enough for somebody/something

tenough to do something

enough for somebody/something
to do something

This sweater isn't big enough for me.
I don't have enough money for a new car.
I don't have enough money to buy a new car. (not for buy)
Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (not for have)
There aren't enough chairs for everybody to sit down.
Exercises

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough + these words:** chairs money paint wind

1. She doesn’t have **enough money**.
2. There aren’t **_____________**.
3. She doesn’t have **_____________**.
4. There isn’t **_____________**.

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + **enough:**
big long strong tall

1. He **isn’t tall enough**.
2. The car **_____________**.
3. His legs aren’t **_____________**.
4. He **_____________**.

Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:
big eat loud old practice salt space time tired

1. “Is there **enough salt** in the soup?” “Yes, it’s fine.”
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
3. He can quit school if he wants – he’s **_____________**.
4. When I visited New York last year, I didn’t have **_____________** to see all the things I wanted to see.
5. This house isn’t **_____________** for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn’t **_____________**.
7. My office is very small. There isn’t **_____________**.
8. It’s late, but I don’t want to go to bed now. I’m not **_____________**.
9. Lisa isn’t a very good tennis player because she doesn’t **_____________**.

Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:
enough money to buy
tomatoes, (sharp / cut)
swimming, (warm / go)
the game, (well / win)
the newspaper, (time / read)
UNIT 93  too

The shoes are too big for him.
There is too much sugar in it.

Too + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard, etc.)
- Can you turn the radio down?
  It's too loud. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm too tired.
- I think you work too hard.

Too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:
- I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too many cars.

Compare too and not enough:

The hat is too big for him.
The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?
There's too much sugar in my coffee.
(= more sugar than I want)
I don't feel very well. I ate too much.

The hat isn't big enough for him. (= it's too small)
The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
There's not enough sugar in my coffee.
(= I need more sugar)
You're very thin. You don't eat enough.

We say:

too . . . for somebody/something

too . . . to do something

too . . . for somebody to do something

These shoes are too big for me.
It's a small house - too small for a large family.
I'm too tired to go out. (not for go out)
It's too cold to sit outside.
She speaks too fast for me to understand.
### 3.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + these words:

- big, crowded, fast, heavy, loud, low

1. The music is **too loud**.
2. The box is ___________________.
3. The net is ___________________.
4. She’s driving ___________________.
5. The ball is ___________________.
6. The museum is ___________________.

### 3.2 Write **too** / **too much** / **too many** or **enough**.

1. You’re always at home. You don’t go out enough.
2. I don’t like the weather here. There’s too much rain.
3. I can’t wait for them. I don’t have enough time.
4. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were too many people.
5. You’re always tired. I think you work too hard.
6. “Did you have something to eat?” “Yes, thank you.”
8. You don’t eat enough vegetables. You should eat more of them.
9. I don’t like the weather here. It’s too cold.
10. Our team didn’t play well. We made too many mistakes.
11. “Would you like some ice in your tea?” “Yes, but not too much.”

### 3.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with these words:

1. I couldn’t work. I was too tired.
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It isn’t loud enough.
3. I don’t want to walk home. It’s far.
4. Don’t buy anything in that store. It’s expensive.
5. You can’t put all your things in this bag. It’s big.
6. I couldn’t do the exercise. It’s too difficult.
7. Your work needs to be better. It’s not good enough.
8. I can’t talk to you now. I’m too busy.
9. I thought the movie was boring. It’s too long.

### 3.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) + **to** . . .

1. (I’m not going out / cold) It’s too cold to go out.
2. (I’m not going to bed / early) It’s too late to go to bed.
3. (they’re not getting married / young) They’re too young to get married.
4. (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) It’s too dangerous to go out at night.
5. (don’t call Sue now / late) It’s too late to call Sue now.
6. (I didn’t say anything / surprised) I was too surprised to say anything.
He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

Verb + object

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together. We say:

- Sue reads a newspaper every day.
  (not Sue reads every day a newspaper)

Verb + object

He speaks English very well. (not He speaks very well English)
I like Italian food very much. (not I like very much ...)
Did you watch television all night? (not Did you watch all night ...)
Paul often wears a black hat. (not Paul wears often ...)
We invited a lot of people to the party.
I opened the door slowly.
Why do you always make the same mistake?
I'm going to borrow some money from the bank.

Where and when

We went to a party last night.

Place (where?) is usually before time (when?). We say:

- We went to a party last night. (not We went last night to a party)
34.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Did you watch all night television?
   Did you watch television all night?
   OK

2. Sue reads a newspaper every day.

3. I like very much this picture.

4. Tom started last week his new job.

5. I want to speak English fluently.

6. Jane bought for her friend a present.

7. I drink every day three cups of coffee.

8. Don’t eat your dinner too quickly!

9. I borrowed from my brother 50 dollars.

34.2 Put the words in order.

1. (the door / opened / I / slowly)
   I opened the door slowly.

2. (a new computer / I / last week / bought)
   I bought a new computer last week.

3. (finished / Paul / quickly / his work)
   Paul finished his work quickly.

4. (Emily / very well / French / doesn’t speak)
   Emily doesn’t speak French very well.

5. (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday)
   I did a lot of shopping yesterday.

6. (New York / do you know / well?)
   Do you know New York well?

7. (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)
   We enjoyed the party very much.

8. (the problem / carefully / I / explained)
   I explained the problem carefully.

9. (we / at the airport / some friends / met)
   We met some friends at the airport.

10. (did you buy / in Canada / that jacket?)
   Did you buy that jacket in Canada?

11. (every day / do / the same thing / we)
   We do the same thing every day.

12. (football / don’t like / very much / I)
   I don’t like football very much.

34.3 Put the words in order.

1. (to work / every day / walks / Lisa) Lisa walks to work every day.

2. (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I arrived at the hotel early.

3. (goes / every year / to Puerto Rico / Julia) Julia goes to Puerto Rico every year.

4. (we / since 2002 / here / have lived) We have lived here since 2002.

5. (in Florida / Sue / in 1984 / was born) Sue was born in Florida in 1984.

6. (didn’t go / yesterday / Paul / to work)
   Paul didn’t go to work yesterday.

7. (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)
   Helen went to a wedding last weekend.

8. (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
   I had my breakfast in bed this morning.

9. (in September / Barbara / to college / is going)
   Barbara is going to college in September.

10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)
    I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.

11. (many times / have been / my parents / to Tokyo)
    My parents have been to Tokyo many times.

12. (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
    I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.

13. (to the movies / tomorrow night / are you going?)
    Are you going to the movies tomorrow night?

14. (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
    I took the children to school this morning.
always/usually/often, etc. (word order 2)

These words (always/never, etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

always often ever rarely also already all
usually sometimes never seldom just still both

- My brother never speaks to me.
- She’s always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- “Don’t forget to call Laura.” “I’ve already called her.”
- I’ve got three sisters. They’re all married.

Always/never, etc. are before the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>never</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>play</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I always drink coffee in the morning. (not I drink always coffee)
- Helen often goes to Chicago on business. (not Helen goes often)
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- They usually have dinner at 7:00.
- We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- Richard is a good swimmer. He also plays tennis and volleyball. (not He plays also tennis)
- I’ve got three sisters. They all live in the same city.

But always/never, etc. are after am/is/are/was/were:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am is are was were</th>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>never</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- I am always tired. (not I always am tired)
- They are never at home during the day.
- It is usually very cold here in the winter.
- When I was a child, I was often late for school.
- “Where’s Laura?” “She’s still in bed.”
- I’ve got two brothers. They’re both doctors.

Always/never, etc. are between two verbs (have . . . been / can . . . find, etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb 1</th>
<th>verb 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn’t often rain here.
- Do you usually drive to work?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Egypt?
- Did the phone just ring?
- The children have all finished their homework.
### Exercises

#### 95.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with **often/never**, etc.

1. **Do you ever play tennis?**
   - Yes, often.
   - **Paul often plays tennis.**

2. **Do you get up early?**
   - Yes, always.
   - **He always gets up early.**

3. **Are you ever late for work?**
   - No, never.
   - **He never is ever late for work.**

4. **Do you ever get angry?**
   - Sometimes.
   - **Sometimes, I get angry.**

5. **Do you ever go swimming?**
   - Rarely.
   - **I rarely go swimming.**

6. **Are you at home in the evenings?**
   - Yes, usually.
   - **Yes, usually I am at home in the evenings.**

#### 95.2 Write these sentences with **never/always/usually**, etc.

1. **My brother speaks to me. (never)**
   - My brother never speaks to me.

2. **Susan is polite. (always)**
   - Susan always is polite.

3. **I finish work at 5:00. (usually)**
   - I usually finish work at 5:00.

4. **Sarah has started a new job. (just)**
   - Sarah just has started a new job.

5. **I go to bed before midnight. (rarely)**
   - I rarely go to bed before midnight.

6. **The bus isn't late. (usually)**
   - The bus usually isn't late.

7. **I don't eat fish. (often)**
   - I often don't eat fish.

8. **I will forget what you said. (never)**
   - I never will forget what you said.

9. **Have you lost your passport? (ever)**
   - Have you ever lost your passport?

10. **Do you work in the same place? (still)**
    - Do you still work in the same place?

11. **They stay at the same hotel. (always)**
    - They always stay at the same hotel.

12. **Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually)**
    - Jane usually doesn't work on Saturdays.

13. **Is Tina here? (already)**
    - Is Tina already here?

14. **What do you have for breakfast? (usually)**
    - What do you usually have for breakfast?

15. **I can remember his name. (never)**
    - I never can remember his name.

#### 95.3 Write sentences with **also**.

1. **Do you play football? (basketball)**
   - Yes, and I also play basketball.

2. **Do you speak Italian? (French)**
   - Yes, and I also speak French.

3. **Are you tired? (hungry)**
   - Yes, and I also am hungry.

4. **Have you been to Mexico? (Guatemala)**
   - Yes, and I also have been to Guatemala.

5. **Did you buy any clothes? (some books)**
   - Yes, and I also bought some books.

#### 95.4 Write sentences with **both and all**.

1. **They both live in Lima.**
   - They both live in Lima.

2. **I'm married. I was born in Venezuela. I live in Miami.**
   - I'm married. I was born in Venezuela. I live in Miami.
still  yet  already

Still

an hour ago

An hour ago it was raining.

now

It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I'm still hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- "Did you sell your car?" "No, I still have it."
- "Do you still live in Los Angeles?" "No, I live in San Francisco now."

Yet

20 minutes ago

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

now

They are still waiting for Bill. Bill hasn't come yet.

yet = until now

We use yet in negative sentences (He hasn't come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?).

Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where’s Emma?
  B: She isn’t here yet. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn’t come)
- A: What are you doing tonight?
  B: I don’t know yet. (= I will know later, but I don’t know now)
- A: Are you ready to go yet?
  B: Not yet. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I’m not ready now)
- A: Have you decided what to do yet?
  B: No, I’m still thinking about it.

Compare yet and still:

- She hasn’t left yet. = She’s still here. (not she is yet here)
- I haven’t finished my homework yet. = I’m still doing it.

Already = earlier than expected:

- “What time is Joe coming?” “He’s already here.” (= earlier than we expected)
- “I’m going to tell you what happened.” “That’s not necessary. I already know.”
- Sarah isn’t coming to the movies with us. She has already seen the film.
Exercises

UNIT 96

1. You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

Tina – two years ago
1. I play the piano.
2. I have an old car.
3. I'm a student.
4. I'm studying Japanese.
5. I go to the movies a lot.
6. I want to be a teacher.

1. Do you still play the piano?
2. Do you __________________.
3. Are ____________________
4. ______________________
5. ______________________
6. ______________________

2. Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

1. (before) They were waiting for the bus.
   (still) They are still waiting.
   (yet) The bus hasn't come yet.

2. (before) He was ________
   (still) He ________
   (yet) ________ yet.

3. (before) She ________ asleep.
   (still) ________
   (yet) ________

4. (before) They ________
   (still) ________
   (yet) ________

3. Write questions with yet.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Maybe she is ready now. You ask her: Are you ready yet?
2. You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here 10 minutes ago. Maybe she is here now. You ask somebody: ____________Helen ____________________________________________
3. Anna had a blood test and is waiting for the results. Maybe she has gotten her results. You ask her: ____________you ______________________________________________
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go for his vacation. Maybe he has decided. You ask him: _____________________________________________________________________

4. Complete the sentences. Use already.

1. What time is Joe coming? He's already here.
2. Do you and Joe want to see the movie? No, we've already seen it.
3. I have to see Julia before she leaves. It's too late. She _____________.
4. Do you need a pen? No, thanks. I ______________ one.
5. Should I pay the bill? No, that's OK. I _______________.
6. Should I tell Paul about the meeting? No, he ______________. I told him.
UNIT 97

Give me that book! Give it to me!

**give** lend pass send show

After these verbs (*give/lend*, etc.), there are two possible structures:

**give something to somebody**
- I gave the keys to Sarah.

**give somebody something**
- I gave Sarah the keys.

---

### B Give something to somebody

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>That's my book.</th>
<th>Give</th>
<th>something</th>
<th>to somebody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>These are Sue’s keys. Can you give me them?</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>these flowers</td>
<td>to me/you/your mother/Kate?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you give me the keys?</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>my car</td>
<td>to her/him?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you send me a postcard?</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>to us yesterday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### C Give somebody something

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Give</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom gave</td>
<td>his mother</td>
<td>some flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lent</td>
<td>Joe</td>
<td>some money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much money did you lend?</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>an e-mail. Did you get it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I sent</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>her vacation photos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicole showed</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>the salt, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you pass</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>that book. It's mine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say “buy/get somebody something”:
- I bought my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)
- Can you get me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)

---

### D You can say:

- I gave the keys to Sarah.
  
  **and** I gave Sarah the keys.
  
  (but not I gave to Sarah the keys)

- That's my book. Can you give it to me?
  
  **and** Can you give me that book?
  
  (but not Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (*give something to somebody*) with *it* or *them*:
- I gave it to her. *(not I gave her it)*
- Here are the keys. Give them to your father. *(not Give your father them)*
Exercises

57.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.

Write sentences beginning He gave . . .

1. What did Mark do with the armchair? He gave it to his brother.
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave it to his sister.
3. What happened to the books? He gave them to his brother.
4. What about the lamp? He gave it to Gary.
5. What did he do with the pictures? He gave them to Gary.
6. And the ladder? He gave it to his neighbour.

57.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1. I gave Paul a book.
2. I gave Joanna a plant.
3. I gave Richard a tie.
4. I gave Emma a chocolate.
5. I gave Rachel a flower.
6. I gave Kevin a pen.

57.3 Write questions beginning Can you give me . . . ? / Can you pass me . . . ?, etc.

1. (you want the salt) (pass) Can you pass me the salt?
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you lend me an umbrella?
3. (you want my address) (give) Can you give me your address?
4. (you need 20 dollars) (lend) Can you lend me 20 dollars?
5. (you want some information) (send) Can you send me some information?
6. (you want to see the letter) (show) Can you show me the letter?
7. (you want some stamps) (get) Can you get me some stamps?

57.4 Which is right?

1. I gave to Sarah the keys / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys is right)
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the police officer my driver's license / I showed the police officer my driver's license.
and but or so because

We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A

The car stopped. The driver got out. sentence B

The car stopped, and the driver got out.

And/but/or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
<th>*It is not necessary to repeat “we” and “she.”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We stayed at home</td>
<td>(we)* watched television.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My sister is married</td>
<td>(she)* lives in Houston.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He doesn’t like her,</td>
<td>she doesn’t like him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I bought a newspaper,</td>
<td>I didn’t read it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s a nice house,</td>
<td>it doesn’t have a garage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to go out?</td>
<td>or are you too tired?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In lists, we use commas (,). We use and before the last two things:

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair, and fell asleep.
- Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping, and Chris is playing football.

So (the result of something)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It was very hot,</td>
<td>I opened the window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe plays a lot of sports,</td>
<td>he’s very fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They don’t like to travel,</td>
<td>they haven’t been to many places.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Because (the reason for something)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I opened the window</td>
<td>because it was very hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe can’t come to the party</td>
<td>because he’s leaving town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisa is hungry</td>
<td>because she didn’t have breakfast.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Because is also possible at the beginning. We use a comma.

- Because it was very hot, I opened the window.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.
- I love New York, but I wouldn’t like to live there because it’s too big.
1. Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use *and/but/or*.

   - I stayed at home.
   - I bought a newspaper.
   - I went to the window.
   - I wanted to call you.
   - I jumped into the river.
   - I usually drive to work.
   - Do you want me to come with you?
   - I didn't have your number. Should I wait here?
   - I didn't read it.
   - I took the bus this morning.
   - I watched television.
   - I swam to the other side.
   - I looked out.

   1. I stayed at home and watched television.
   2. I bought a newspaper but I didn't read it.
   3. 
   4. 
   5. 
   6. 
   7. 

2. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *and/but/so/because*.

   1. It was very hot, __________.
   2. They couldn't play tennis __________.
   3. They went to the museum, __________.
   4. Bill wasn't hungry, __________.
   5. Helen was late __________.
   6. Sue said __________.

3. Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use *and/but*, etc.

   1. (and) __________.
   2. (because) __________.
   3. (but) __________.
   4. (and) __________.
   5. (so) __________.
   6. (because) __________.
When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + it was raining

You can say:

- When I went out, it was raining. or
  It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if When . . . is at the beginning:

- When you're tired, don't drive.
  Don't drive when you're tired.
- Helen was 25 when she got married.
  When Helen got married, she was 25.

We do the same in sentences with before/while/after:

- Always look both ways before you cross the street.
  Before you cross the street, always look both ways.
- While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.
- He never played football again after he broke his leg.
  After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

When I am . . . / When I go . . ., etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
but Lisa is also going away - to Mexico.
So they won't see each other in New York.

Lisa will be in Mexico when Sarah is in New York.

The time is future (next week) but we say:
... when Sarah is in New York.
(not when Sarah will be)

We use the present (I am / I go, etc.) with a future meaning after when:

- When I get home tonight, I'm going to take a shower. (not When I will get home)
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when I have more time.

We do the same after before/while/after/until:

- Please close the window before you go out. (not before you will go)
- Rachel is going to stay in our apartment while we are away. (not while we will be)
- I'll wait here until you come back. (not until you will come back)
1. Write sentences beginning with *when*. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When +</th>
<th>I went out</th>
<th>I turned off the TV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired</td>
<td>I called her</td>
<td>I always go to the same place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go on vacation</td>
<td>the program ended</td>
<td>there were no rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got to the hotel</td>
<td>it was raining</td>
<td>there was no answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like to watch TV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When I went out, it was raining.
2. __________________________________________
3. __________________________________________
4. __________________________________________
5. __________________________________________
6. __________________________________________

2. Complete the sentences using the following:

- somebody broke into the house
- before they crossed the street
- they went to live in France
- before they came here
- while they were away
- they didn’t believe me

1. They looked both ways ______________ before they crossed the street.
2. They were very surprised ____________________________________________.
3. After they got married, ____________________________________________.
4. Their house was damaged in a storm ____________________________________________.
5. Where did they live ________________________________________________?
6. While we were asleep, ____________________________________________.
7. When I told them what happened, ____________________________________________.

3. Which is right?

1. I stay / I’ll stay here until you come / you’ll come back. *(I’ll stay and you come are right)*
2. I’m going to bed when I finish / I’ll finish my work.
3. We must do something before it’s / it will be too late.
4. Helen is moving away soon. I’m / I’ll be very sad when she leaves / she’ll leave.
5. Don’t go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We’ll come and visit you when we’re / we’ll be in Toronto again.
7. When I come / I’ll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I’ll bring your DVDs.
8. I’m going to Quebec next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I’m / I’ll be there.
9. “I need your address.” “OK, I give / I’ll give it to you before I go / I’ll go.”
10. I’m not ready yet. I tell / I’ll tell you when I’m / I’ll be ready.

4. Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before you go out ____________________________?
2. What are you going to do when ____________________________?
3. When I have enough money, ____________________________.
4. I’ll wait for you while ____________________________.
5. When I start my new job, ____________________________.
6. Will you be here when ____________________________?
If we go . . . If you see . . . , etc.

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:
If at the beginning
- If we take the bus, it will be cheaper.
- If you don’t hurry, you’ll miss the train.
- If you’re hungry, have something to eat.
- If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

if in the middle
- It will be cheaper if we take the bus.
- You’ll miss the train if you don’t hurry.
- I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
- Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:
- “Are you going to the concert?” “Yes, if I can get a ticket.”

If you see Ann tomorrow . . . , etc.

After if, we use the present (not will). We say if you see . . . (not if you will see):
- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- If I’m late tonight, don’t wait for me. (not if I will be)
- What should we do if it rains? (not if it will rain)
- If I don’t feel well tomorrow, I’ll stay home.

If and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I’m not sure:
- A: Are you going out later?
  B: Maybe. If I go out, I’ll close the windows.

When I go out = I’m going out (for sure):
- A: Are you going out later?
  B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I’ll close the windows.

Compare when and if:
- When I get home tonight, I’m going to take a shower.
- If I’m late tonight, don’t wait for me. (not When I’m late)
- We’re going to play basketball if it doesn’t rain. (not when it doesn’t rain)
Exercises

100.1 Write sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

If +

you don't hurry
you pass the driving test
you fail the driving test
you don't want this magazine
you want those pictures
you're busy now
you're hungry
you need money

+ we can have lunch now
you can have them
I can lend you some
you'll get your license
you'll be late
I'll throw it away
we can talk later
you can take it again

1. If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
2. If you pass ________________________________
3. If ________________________________
4. ________________________________
5. ________________________________
6. ________________________________
7. ________________________________
8. ________________________________

100.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / I'll be late tonight, don't wait for me. (I'm is right)
2. Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the afternoon.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Jane get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

100.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if ________________________________
2. If you don't hurry, ________________________________
3. I don't want to disturb you if ________________________________
4. If you go to bed early tonight, ________________________________
5. Turn the television off if ________________________________
6. Tina won't pass her driving test if ________________________________
7. If I have time tomorrow, ________________________________
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if ________________________________
9. I'll be surprised if ________________________________

100.4 Write if or when.

1. If I'm late tonight, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going shopping now. _______________ I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm thinking of going to see Tim. _______________ I go, will you come with me?
4. _______________ you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Is it OK _______________ I close the window?
6. John is still in high school. _______________ he finishes, he wants to go to college.
7. Do you want to go on a picnic tomorrow _______________ the weather is good?
8. We're going to Mexico City next week. We're going to look for a hotel _______________ we get there. I don't know what we'll do _______________ we don't find a room.
If I had . . . If we went . . ., etc.

If I had the money, he would buy a fast car.

Usually **had** is past, but in this sentence **had** is not past. **If he had** the money = if he had the money **now** (but he doesn’t have it).

| If you it they, etc. | had/knew/lived/went (etc.) . . ., didn’t have / didn’t know (etc.) . . ., were . . ., could . . ., | If you it they, etc. | would(n’t) | buy . . . be . . . have . . . go . . ., etc. |

You can say:
- **If he had** the money, he would buy a car.
  - Or He would buy a car **if he had** the money.

I’d / she’d / they’d, etc. = I would / she would / they would, etc.:
- I don’t know the answer. **If I knew** the answer, I’d tell you.
- It’s raining, so we’re not going out. **We’d get wet** if we went out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn’t be** happy if she lived in the country.
- **If you didn’t have** a job, what **would you** do? (but you have a job)
- I’m sorry I can’t help you. I’d **help you if I could**. (but I can’t)
- **If we had** a car, we could travel more. (but we **don’t** have a car, so we can’t travel much)

**If (I) was/were . . .**

You can say **if I/he/she/it was** or **if I/he/she/it were**:
- It’s not a very nice place. I wouldn’t go there if I **were you**. (or . . . if I was you)
- It would be nice if the weather was better. (or . . . if the weather were better)
- What would Tom do if he were here? (or . . . if he was here)

**Compare:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If I have / if it is, etc.</th>
<th>If I had / if it was, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I want to go and see Helen.</td>
<td>I want to go and see Helen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>If I have</strong> time, I <strong>will go</strong> today. (= maybe I’ll have time, so maybe I’ll go)</td>
<td><strong>If I had</strong> time, I <strong>would go</strong> today. (= I don’t have time today, so I will not go)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like that jacket.  <strong>I’ll buy it if it isn’t</strong> too expensive. (= maybe it will not be too expensive)</td>
<td>I like that jacket.  <strong>I’d buy it if it wasn’t</strong> so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I’m not going to buy it)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| I’ll help you if I can. (= maybe I can help) | I’d **help you if I could**, but I can’t.


**UNIT 101**

1. Complete the sentences.
   1. I don't know the answer. If I **knew** the answer, I'd tell you.
   2. I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I **didn't have** a car.
   3. I don't want to go out. If I _____________ to go out, I'd go.
   4. We don't have a key. If we _____________ a key, we could get into the house.
   5. I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I _____________ hungry.
   6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she _____________ it.
   7. He can't speak any foreign languages. If he _____________ speak a foreign language, maybe he would get a better job.
   8. You don't try hard enough. If you _____________ harder, you would have more success.
   9. I have a lot to do today. If I _____________ it.

2. Put the verb in the correct form.
   1. If **he had** the money, he would buy a fast car. (he / have)
   2. Jane likes living in a city. **She wouldn't be** happy if she lived in the country. (she / not / be)
   3. If I wanted to learn Italian, **to go out**, I'd go. (I / go)
   4. I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if **she / know**. (she / know)
   5. If **we / have** a bigger house, it would be a little cheaper. (we / have)
   6. If **I / win** a lot of money, I'd go to Italy. (I / go)
   7. It's not a very good hotel. **not / stay** there if I were you. (I / not / stay)
   8. If **we / live** closer to Miami, we would go there more often. (we / live)
   9. I'm sorry you have to go now. **I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if**. (I / not / know)
   10. Life would be boring if ****. (it / be)
   11. If you could change one thing in the world, what would you do? (you / change)

3. Complete the sentences. Use the following (with the verb in the correct form):

   - we (have) a bigger house
   - it (be) a little cheaper
   - I (watch) it
   - we (buy) a bigger house
   - every day (be) the same
   - I (be) bored
   - we (have) some pictures on the wall
   - the air (be) cleaner

   1. **I'd buy that jacket if** **it was a little cheaper**.
   2. If there was a good movie on TV tonight, 
   3. This room would be nicer if 
   4. If there wasn't so much traffic, 
   5. Life would be boring if 
   6. If I had nothing to do, 
   7. We could invite all our friends to stay if 
   8. If we had more money, 

4. Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

   1. I'd be happier if **I had less work**.
   2. If I could go anywhere in the world, 
   3. I wouldn't be very happy if 
   4. I'd buy if 
   5. If I saw an accident in the street, 
   6. The world would be a better place if 

---

**Exercises**
Who is for people (not things):

A thief is a person who steals things.
Do you know anybody who can play the piano?
The man who called didn't give his name.
The people who work in the office are very friendly.

That is for things or people:

An airplane is a machine that flies.
Emma lives in a house that is 100 years old.
The people that work in the office are very friendly.

You can use that for people, but who is more common.

Which is for things (not people):

An airplane is a machine which flies. (not a machine who . . .)
Emma lives in a house which is 100 years old.

Do not use which for people:

Do you remember the woman who played the piano at the party?
(not the woman which . . .)
1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A . . . is a person who . . . . Use a dictionary if necessary.

- thief
- a dentist
- a fool
- a butcher
- genius
- a liar
- a musician
- a patient
- thief is a person who steals things.
- doesn't tell the truth
- dances
- takes care of your teeth
- is very intelligent
- plays a musical instrument
- is sick in the hospital
- steals things
- does stupid things
- sells meat

1. A thief is a person who steals things.
2. A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3. A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4. A patient is a person who is sick in the hospital.
5. A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.
6. A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
7. A dental hygienist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
8. A liar is a person who does stupid things.

2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man called. He didn't give his name.)
   The man who called didn't give his name.
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman ____________________________________________ a yellow dress.
3. (Some students took the test. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students ____________________________________________
4. (A police officer stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
   The ______________________________________________________________________________

3 Write who or which.

1. I met a woman who can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the man ______ just started working in your office?
3. What's the name of the river ______ flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture ______ was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody ______ wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions ______ are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend ______ is very good at fixing cars.
8. I think everybody ______ went to the party really enjoyed it.
9. Why does he always wear clothes ______ are too small for him?

4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person which steals things.
2. An airplane is a machine that flies.
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table?
5. I don't like people which never stop talking.
6. I know somebody that can help you.
7. I know somebody who works in that store.
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong.
9. My neighbor bought a car who cost $60,000.
the people we met
the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

You can say:
- The bag that he is carrying . . . or The bag he is carrying . . . (with or without that)
- . . . the money that Kate won? or . . . the money Kate won?

You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The man</td>
<td>was carrying</td>
<td>a bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>some money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>some books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>some people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
→ the money (that) Kate won
→ the books (that) you wanted
→ the people (who) we met

- Did you find the books you wanted? (or . . . the books that you wanted?)
- The people we met were very friendly. (or The people who we met . . .)
- Everything I said was true. (or Everything that I said . . .)

We say:
- The movie we saw was very good. (not The movie we saw it was . . .)

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at, etc.) after the verb:

Eve is talking to a man. → Do you know the man Eve is talking to?
We stayed at a hotel. → The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
I told you about some books. → These are the books I told you about.

We say:
. . . the books I told you about. (not the books I told you about them)

You can say (a place) where . . .:
- The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at . . .)

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject (→ Unit 102):
- I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that is the subject)
1. Make one sentence from two.

1. (Helen took some pictures. Have you seen them?)
   Have you seen the pictures Helen took?

2. (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
   I've lost the ____________________________

3. (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the ____________________________

4. (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the ____________________________?

5. (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
   I ____________________________

6. (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How ____________________________?

2. Make one sentence from two.

1. (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.

2. (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The ____________________________

3. (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
   The shoes ____________________________

4. (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
   The ____________________________

3. You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1. Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
   What's the name of the hotel you stayed at?

2. Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
   Who are the people ____________________________?

3. Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
   Did you find the ____________________________?

4. Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
   Where is the ____________________________?

5. Your friend was talking about a movie. You ask:
   What's the name of ____________________________?

6. Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
   What's that ____________________________?

7. Your friend was waiting for an e-mail. You ask:
   Did you get ____________________________?

4. Complete the questions. Use where.

1. John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
   Did you like the hotel where you stayed?

2. Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
   What's the name of the restaurant ____________________________?

3. Sarah lives in a town. You ask her:
   How big is the ____________________________?

4. Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   Where exactly is ____________________________?
**A**

At

- 8:00
- 10:30
- midnight, etc.
- night
- the end of...

- I start work **at 8:00 in the morning.**
- The banks close **at 5:00.**
- I can't sleep **at night.**
- I'm taking a trip **at the end of October.**

**B**

On

- Sunday(s) / Monday(s), etc.
- April 25 / June 6, etc.
- Monday morning / Tuesday afternoon / Friday night, etc.
- New Year's Day, etc.

You can say:
- **Bye!** See you **on Friday.** or See you **Friday.** (with or without on)
- Do you work **on Sundays?** or Do you work **Sundays?**
- The concert is **on November 20.** or The concert is **November 20.**
- I'm leaving **on Friday night.** or I'm leaving **Friday night.**

We say **on the weekend / on weekends** (always with on).
- They like to eat out **on the weekend / on weekends.**

**C**

In

- April / June, etc.
- 2009 / 1968, etc.
- the spring / summer / fall / winter
- the morning / afternoon / evening

- I'm taking a trip **in October.**
- Amy was born **in 1988.**
- The park is beautiful **in the fall.**
- Do you often go out **in the evening.**

**D**

We do **not use** at/on/in before:

this ... (this morning / this week, etc.)
every ... (every day / every week, etc.)
last ... (last August / last week, etc.)
next ... (next Monday / next week, etc.)

- What are you doing **this weekend?**
- We go on vacation **every summer.** Last summer we went to Europe.
- I'm leaving **next Monday.** (not on next Mon)

**E**

In five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years, etc.

- Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes.** (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Bye! I'll see you **in a few days.** (= a few days from now)
Exercises

4.1 Write at or in.
1. Amy was born in 1988.
2. I got up at 8:00 this morning.
3. I like to get up early in the morning.
4. I like to look at the stars in night.
5. My brother got married in May.
6. We often go to the beach in the summer.
7. Let’s meet in 7:30 tomorrow night.
8. The company started in 1989.
9. I’ll send you the money in the evening.
10. The café is open in the evening. It closes in midnight.

4.2 Write at/on/in.
1. on June 6
2. in the evening
3. half past two
4. Wednesday
5. September 1997
6. September
7. September 24
8. Thursday
9. 11:45
10. Christmas Day
11. noon
12. the morning
13. the evening
14. the day
15. night
16. the weekend
17. the end of the month
18. the winter

4.3 Which sentence is correct – A, B, or both of them?

A
1. I’m taking a trip in October.
2. Do you work on Sundays?
3. I always feel tired in the evening.
4. I’m leaving on next Saturday.
5. Tim started his new job in May 18.
7. We meet on every Tuesday.
8. We don’t often go out in night.
9. I can’t meet you on Thursday.
10. Lisa saw Sam on Monday night.
11. I’m leaving in the end of this month.
12. Tim goes to the gym in Fridays.

B
1. I’m taking a trip on October.
2. Do you work Sundays?
3. I always feel tired at the evening.
4. I’m leaving on next Saturday.
5. Tim started his new job May 18.
7. We meet every Tuesday.
8. We don’t often go out at night.
9. I can’t meet you on Thursday.
10. Lisa saw Sam on Monday night.
11. I’m leaving at the end of this month.
12. Tim goes to the gym Fridays.

4.4 Write sentences with in . . .
1. It’s 8:25 now. The train leaves at 8:30.
2. It’s Monday today. I’ll call you on Thursday.
3. Today is June 14. My exam is on June 28.
4. It’s 3:00 now. Tom will be here at 3:30.

4.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1. They like to eat out on weekends.
2. I’m going next Friday. (already complete)
3. I always feel tired the evening.
4. Will you be at home this evening?
5. We went to France last summer.
6. Laura was born in 1994.
7. What are you doing the weekend?
8. I call Robert every Sunday.
9. Should we play tennis next Sunday?
10. I couldn’t go to the party last weekend.
11. I’m going out. I’ll be back an hour.
12. I don’t often go out night.
**UNIT 105**

**from . . . to until since for**

**A**

**From . . . to . . .**
- We lived in Japan from 1996 to 2005.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from . . . until . . .:
- We lived in Japan from 1996 until 2005.

**B**

**Until . . .**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>until</th>
<th>Friday</th>
<th>December</th>
<th>3:00</th>
<th>I come back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
- They're leaving town tomorrow. They'll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book until 3:00 a.m.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say till (= until):
- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:
- "How long will you be away?" 
  "Until Monday."
- "When are you coming back?"
  "On Monday."

**C**

**Since + a time in the past (to now)**

We use since after the present perfect (have been / have done, etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>since</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>2002</th>
<th>2:30</th>
<th>I arrived</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
- Joe is in the hospital. He has been in the hospital since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married since 2002. (= from 2002 to now)
- It has been raining since I arrived.

Compare:
- We lived in Japan from 1996 to 2005.
  We lived in Japan until 2005.
- Now we live in Denver. We came to Denver in 2005.
  We have lived in Denver since 2005. (= from 2005 until now)

We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / 10 years, etc.):
- Joe has been in the hospital for three days. (not since three days)

**D**

**For + a period of time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for</th>
<th>three days</th>
<th>10 years</th>
<th>five minutes</th>
<th>a long time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
- Gary stayed with us for three days.
- I'm going away for a few weeks.
- They've been married for 10 years.
- I'm going away for the weekend.
Read the information and complete the sentences. Use from . . . to / until / since.

Alex


Jin Sook

- I live in Australia now. I lived in South Korea before. I came to Australia in 2007.

Beth

- I work in a restaurant now. I worked in a hotel before. I started work in the restaurant in 2005.

Adam

- I'm a journalist now. I was a teacher before. I started work as a journalist in 2002.

2. (Alex / Canada / → 2003) Alex has lived in Canada since 2003.
3. (Alex / Japan / 2003 →) Alex has lived in Japan since 2003.
4. (Jin Sook / South Korea → 2007) Jin Sook has lived in South Korea since 2007.
7. (Beth / a restaurant / 2005 →) Beth has worked at a restaurant since 2005.
9. (Adam / a journalist / 2002 →) Adam has been a journalist since 2002.

Now write sentences with for.

10. (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
11. (Alex / Japan) Alex has lived in Japan for eight years.
12. (Jin Sook / Australia) Jin Sook has lived in Australia for five years.
13. (Beth / a hotel) Beth has worked at a hotel for three years.
14. (Beth / restaurant) Beth has worked at a restaurant for three years.
15. (Adam / a teacher) Adam has been a teacher for six years.
16. (Adam / a journalist) Adam has been a journalist for five years.

Write until/since/for.

1. Sue and Dave have been married since 2002.
2. I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed until 10:00.
3. We waited for Sue for half an hour, but she didn’t come.
4. “Did you just get here?” “No, I’ve been here since 7:30.”
5. “How long did you stay at the party last night?” “Until midnight.”
6. Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other since 10 years.
7. I’m tired. I’m going to lie down for a few minutes.
8. (in an airplane that's landing) Please stay in your seats until the airplane reaches the gate.
9. This is my house. I’ve lived here since I was seven years old.
10. Jack is out of town. He’ll be away until Wednesday.
11. Next week I’m going to Chicago for three days.
12. I usually finish work at 5:30, but sometimes I work until 6:00.
13. “How long have you known Anna?” “Since we were in high school.”
14. Where have you been? I’ve been waiting for you for 20 minutes.
before after during while

**A**

**Before, during, and after**

- Everybody feels nervous before a test.
- I fell asleep during the movie.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.

**B**

**Before, while, and after**

- Don’t forget to close the window before you go out.
- I often fall asleep while I’m reading.
- They watched TV after they did the dishes.

**C**

**During, while, and for**

We use *during* + noun (during the movie). We use *while* + verb (while I’m reading):
- We didn’t speak during the meal.
- We didn’t speak while we were eating. (not during we were eating)

Use *for* (not during) + a period of time (three days / two hours / a year, etc.):
- We played basketball for two hours. (not during two hours)
- I lived in Florida for a year. (not during a year)

**D**

You can use *before/after* + -ing (before going / after eating, etc.):
- I always have breakfast before going to work. (= before I go to work)
- After doing the dishes, they watched TV. (= after they did)

Remember: We say before going (not before to go), after doing (not after to do), etc.:
- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (not before to eat)
- I started work after reading the newspaper. (not after to read)

past continuous (I was -ing) — ► Units 13-14  before/after/while/when — ► Unit 99
for — ► Unit 105  prepositions + -ing — ► Unit 113
Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

1. Everybody was nervous before the test.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning and another three hours during the day.
3. The movie was really boring. We left after the concert.
4. Anna went to night school to learn German. She learned a lot after the test.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in Chicago from the end of the course to the beginning of the night.
6. A: Somebody broke a window while you were out. Did you hear anything?
   B: No, I was asleep all the time.
7. Would you like to sit down before the end of the test?
8. “Are you going home before the test?” “Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.”

Write during/while/for.

1. We didn't speak while we were eating.
2. We didn't speak during the meal.
3. Gary called while you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome for five days.
5. Sally didn't read any newspapers while she was on vacation.
6. The students looked very bored while they were waiting.
7. I fell out of bed while I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV for three hours.
9. I don't usually watch TV while you are having dinner.
10. Do you ever watch TV while you are having dinner?

Complete the sentences. Use -ing (doing, having, etc.).

1. After doing the dishes, they watched TV.
2. I felt sick after having too much chocolate.
3. I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before asking it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after taking a shower.
5. After finishing my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before going to a foreign country, you should try and learn a little of the language.

Write sentences with before + -ing and after + -ing.

1. They did the dishes. Then they watched TV.
   After doing the dishes, they watched TV.
2. John finished high school. Then he worked in a bookstore for two years.
   John worked during the course.
3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
   Before going to the concert, I read for a few minutes.
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
5. Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
   Let's have a cup of coffee while you are waiting for the concert.
UNIT 107

in at on (places 1)

A

In

in a store
in a room
in a car
in the water

in a garden
in a town
in a park
in Brazil

“Where’s David?” “In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In Seoul.”

What’s in that box / in that bag / in that closet?

Rachel works in a store / in a bank / in a factory.

I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the ocean.

Milan is in the north of Italy. Naples is in the south.

I live in a big city, but I’d like to live in the country.

B

At

at the bus stop
at the door
at the traffic light
at her desk

There’s somebody at the bus stop / at the door.

The car is waiting at the traffic light.

Jane is working at her desk.

at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of . . .):

Write your name at the top of the page.

My house is at the end of the street.

C

On

on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor,

etc.

on a wall
on the ceiling
on a door,

etc.

There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.

There are a lot of apples on those trees.

Don’t sit on the grass. It’s wet.

There is a stamp on the envelope.

On a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorcycle:

Who is that man on the motorcycle?
Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. Where is he? **in the kitchen**
2. Where are the shoes? **in/on**
3. Where is the pen? **on**
4. Where is the clock? **on**
5. Where is the bus? **at**
6. Where are the horses? **on**
7. Where are they standing? **on**
8. Where is she swimming? **in**
9. Where is he standing? **in/on**
10. Where is the spider? **on**
11. Where is he sitting? **on**
12. Where is she sitting? **on**
13. Don’t sit **on** the grass. It’s wet.
14. What do you have **on** your bag?
15. Look! There’s a man **on** the roof. What’s he doing?
16. There are a lot of fish **in** this river.
17. Our house is number 45 – the number is **in** the door.
18. “Is the post office near here?” “Yes, turn left **at** the traffic light.”
19. I have a small vegetable garden **in** the backyard.
20. My sister lives **in** Prague.
21. There’s a small park **on** the top of the hill.
22. I think I heard the doorbell. There’s somebody **on** the door.
23. Munich is a large city **in** the south of Germany.
24. There’s a gas station **at** the end of the block.
25. It’s difficult to carry a lot of things **on** a bicycle.
26. I looked at the list of names. My name was **in** the bottom.
27. There is a mirror **on** the wall **in** the living room.
**A**

**In**

- in bed
- in the hospital
- in the sky
- in the world
- in a newspaper / in a book
- in a photograph / in a picture
- in a car / in a taxi
- in the middle (of . . .)

- "Where's Kate?"  "She's in bed."
- David's father is sick. He's in the hospital.
- I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.
- What's the largest city in the world?
- I read about the accident in the newspaper.
- You look sad in this photograph.
- Did you come here in your car?
- There's a big tree in the middle of the yard.

**B**

**At**

- at work / at school
- at the station / at the airport
- at the post office / at the supermarket
- at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's, etc.
- at a concert / at a party / at a football game, etc.

- "Where's Kate?"  "She's at work."
- Do you want me to meet you at the station?
- I saw your brother at the post office today.
- A: Where were you yesterday?  
  B: At my sister's.
- I saw Tom at the doctor's.
- There weren't many people at the party.

You can say be/stay home or be/stay at home (with or without at).

- Is Tom at home?  or  Is Tom home?

Often it is possible to use at or in for buildings (hotels, restaurants, etc.):

- We stayed at a nice hotel.  or  We stayed in a nice hotel.

**C**

You can say at school or in school, but there is a difference.

- She's at school = she's there now
  
  - "Where's your sister? Is she home?"  "No, she's at school."

- She's in school = she's a student (in high school / college / medical school, etc.)
  
  - "Does your sister have a job?"  "No, she's still in school."

**D**

**On**

- on a bus
- on the second floor
- on the way from A to B

- Did you come here on the bus?
- The office is on the second floor. (not in the second floor)
- I met Ann on the way to work / on the way home.
- My brother lives on a nice street.
A. Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. (the hospital)
2. (the airport)
3. (bed)
4. (a ship)
5. (the sky)
6. (a party)
7. (the doctor’s)
8. (the second floor)
9. (work)
10. (a plane)
11. (a taxi)
12. (a wedding)

1. Where is she? In the hospital.
2. Where are they? ___________________.
3. Where is he? ___________________.
4. Where are they? ___________________.
5. Where are the stars? ________________
6. Where are they? ________________

B. Write in/at/on.

1. “Where’s your sister? Is she home?” “No, she’s at school.”
2. There was a big table in the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river in the world?
4. Were there many people at the concert last night?
5. Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is the man on this picture? Do you know him?
7. “Is your son going to get married soon?” “No, he’s at college.”
8. Gary is coming by bus. I’m going to meet him at the station.
9. Charlie is at the hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there in this book?
11. “Are you hungry after your trip?” “Yes, there was nothing to eat on the plane.”
12. I’m sorry I’m late. My car broke down on the way here.
13. “Is Tom here?” “No, he’s at his brother’s.”
14. Don’t believe everything you read on the newspaper!
15. I walked to work, but I came home on the bus.
16. A: (on the phone) Can I speak to Anne, please?
   B: No, sorry. She’ll be at the university until 5:00 today.
UNIT 109

to • in • at (places 3)

A

To
go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ... 

- We’re going to New York on Sunday.
- I want to go to Mexico next year.
- We walked from my house to the mall.
- What time do you go to bed?

In/at (→ Units 106–107)
be / stay / do something (etc.) in ...

- The Statue of Liberty is in New York.
- My brother lives in Mexico.
- The best stores are in the mall.
- I like to read in bed.

be / stay / do something (etc.) at ...

- The bus is going to the airport.
- Karen didn’t go to work yesterday.
- I went to a party last night.
- We’d like you to come to our house.

B

Home

go/come/walk (etc.) home (without to)
- I’m tired. I’m going home.
- (not to home)
- Did you walk home?

be/stay (at) home (with or without at)
- I’m staying home tonight.
- (or I’m staying at home.)

But: do something (work, watch TV, etc.) at home
- Dan doesn’t go to an office. He works at home.

C

Arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Mexico / arrive in Tokyo, etc.):
- They arrived in Brazil last week. (not arrived to Brazil)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work, etc.):
- What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place):
- What time did you get to the hotel?
- What time did you get to Tokyo?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):
- I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.
Exercises

1 Write to or in.
1. I like reading ______ bed.
2. We're going ______ Italy next month.
3. Sue is on vacation ______ Mexico right now.
4. I have to go ______ the bank today.
5. I was tired, so I stayed ______ bed.
6. What time do you usually go ______ bed?
7. Does this bus go ______ the airport?
8. Would you like to live ______ another country?

2 Write to or at if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.
1. Paula didn't go ______ work yesterday.
2. I'm tired. I'm going ______ home. (already complete)
3. Tina is sick. She went ______ the doctor.
4. Would you like to come ______ a party on Saturday?
5. "Is Liz ______ home?" "No, she went ______ work."
6. There were 20,000 people ______ the football game.
7. Why did you go ______ home early last night?
8. A boy jumped into the river and swam ______ the other side.
9. There were a lot of people waiting ______ the bus stop.
10. We had dinner ______ a restaurant, and then we went back ______ the hotel.

3 Write to, at, or in if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.
1. Joe is coming tomorrow. I'm meeting him ______ the airport.
2. We're going ______ a concert tomorrow night.
3. I went ______ Chile last year.
4. How long did you stay ______ Chile?
5. Next year we hope to go ______ Japan to visit some friends.
6. Do you want to go ______ the movies tonight?
7. Did you park your car ______ the station?
8. After the accident, three people were taken ______ the hospital.
9. How often do you go ______ the dentist?
10. "Is Sarah here?" "No, she's ______ Helen's."
11. My house is ______ the end of the block on the left.
12. I went ______ Maria's house, but she wasn't ______ home.
13. There were no taxis, so we had to walk ______ home.
14. "Who did you meet ______ the party?" "I didn't go ______ the party."

4 Write to, at, or in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1. What time do you usually get ______ work?
2. What time do you usually get ______ home?
3. What time did you arrive ______ the party?
4. When did you arrive ______ Dallas?
5. What time does the plane get ______ Paris?
6. We arrived ______ home very late.

5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.
1. At 3:00 this morning I was ______ bed
2. Yesterday I went ______
3. At 11:00 yesterday morning I was ______
4. One day I'd like to go ______
5. I don't like going ______
6. At 9:00 last night I was ______
next to, between, under, etc.

**A. Next to / between / in front of / in back of**

Alice is **next to** Bob.  or  Alice is **beside** Bob.
Bob is **between** Alice and Carla.
Don is **in front of** Bob.
Eric is **in back of** Bob.

**also**
Alice is **on the left**.
Carla is **on the right**.
Bob is **in the middle** (of the group).

**B. Across from / in front of**

Anne is sitting **in front of** Bruce.
Anne is sitting **across from** Chris.
Chris is sitting **across from** Anne.

**C. By (= next to)**

- Who is that man standing **by the window**?
- Our house is **by the ocean**. (= next to the ocean)
- If you feel cold, why don’t you sit **by the fire**?

**D. Under**

- The cat is **under the table**.
- The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- I’m wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

**E. Above and below**

- A is **above the line**. (= higher than the line)
- B is **below the line**. (= lower than the line)

- The pictures are **above the shelves**.
- The shelves are **below the pictures**.
Exercises

10.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

1. Kevin is standing in back of Fred.
2. Fred is sitting behind Emily.
3. Emily is sitting next to Barbara.
4. Emily is sitting in the middle of Donna and Fred.
5. Donna is sitting next to Emily.
6. Fred is sitting next to Kevin.
7. Alan is standing next to Donna.
8. Alan is standing to the left.
9. Barbara is standing in the middle.

10.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The cat is under the table.
2. There is a big tree in front of the house.
3. The plane is flying in the clouds.
4. She is standing in front of the piano.
5. The movie theater is across from the right.
6. She's sitting on the phone.
7. The calendar is above the clock.
8. The cabinet is in front of the sink.
9. There are some shoes in front of the bed.
10. The plant is behind the piano.
11. Paul is sitting in front of Anna.
12. In Japan people drive on the left.

10.3 Write sentences about the picture.

1. (next to) The bank is next to the ________.
2. (in front of) The ________ is in front of ________.
3. (across from) ________ is across from ________.
4. (next to) ________ is next to ________.
5. (above) ________ is above ________.
6. (between) ________ is between ________.
Jane is going to France next week.
We walked from the hotel to the station.
A lot of English words come from Latin.

We jumped into the water.
A man came out of the house and got into a car.
Why are you looking out of the window?
I took the old batteries out of the radio.

We say put something in . . . (not usually into):
I put new batteries in the radio.

Don’t put your feet on the table.
Please take your feet off the table.
I’m going to hang some pictures on the wall.
Be careful! Don’t fall off your bicycle.
We got on the bus downtown.

We walked up the hill to the house.
Be careful! Don’t fall down the stairs.

The plane flew over the mountains.
I jumped over the wall into the garden.
Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder.

A bird flew into the room through a window.
The old highway goes through the town.
The new road goes around the town.
The bus stop is just around the corner.
I walked around the town and took some pictures.

I was walking along the road with my dog.
Let’s go for a walk along the river.
The dog swam across the river.

They walked past me without speaking.
A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
B: Go along this street, past the movie theater, under the bridge, and the hospital is on the left.
Exercises

11.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go . . .

Go . . .

1. Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go . . .

2. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The dog swam across the river.
2. A book fell from the shelf.
3. A plane flew over the town.
4. A woman got into the car.
5. A girl ran down the street.
6. Suddenly a car came around the corner.
7. They drove into the town.
8. They got on the train.
9. The moon travels around the earth.
10. They got through the house through a window.

3. Complete the sentences. Use over/from/into, etc.

1. I looked over the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is near here. It's just around the corner.
3. "Where's my phone?" "You put it from your bag."
4. How far is it from here to the airport?
5. We walked into the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat on the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball over the net.
8. Silvia took a key from her bag and opened the door.
on at by with about

On
- on vacation
- on television
- on the radio
- on the phone
- on fire
- on time (= not late)

Jane isn't at work this week. She's on vacation.
We watched the news on television.
We listened to the news on the radio.
I spoke to Rachel on the phone last night.
The house is on fire! Call the fire department.
"Was the train late?" "No, it was on time."

At
- at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometers an hour / at 100 degrees, etc.:  
  - Lisa got married at 21. (or . . . at the age of 21.)
  - A car uses more gas at 70 miles an hour than at 55.
  - Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

By
- by car / by bus / by plane / by bike, etc.:  
  - Do you like traveling by train?
  - Jane usually goes to work by bike.

but on foot:
  - You can't get there by car. You have to go on foot. (= you have to walk)

a book by . . . / a painting by . . . / a piece of music by . . ., etc.:
  - Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
  - Who is that painting by? Picasso?

by after the passive (→ Unit 22):
  - I was bitten by a dog.

With/Without
- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

a man with a beard / a woman with glasses, etc.:
  - Do you know that man with the beard?
  - I'd like to have a house with a big yard.

About
- talk/speak/think/hear/know about . . . :  
  - Some people talk about their work all the time.
  - I don't know much about cars.

a book / a question / a program / information (etc.) about . . . :
  - There was a program about volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?
Exercises

UNIT 112

1. Complete the sentences. Use on + these words:

   the phone  the radio  television  time  vacation

   1. We heard the news _______ on the radio _______.
   2. Please don’t be late. Try to get here _______.
   3. I won’t be here next week. I’m going _______.
   4. “Did you see Linda?” “No, but I talked to her _______.
   5. “What’s _______ tonight?” “Nothing that I want to watch.”

2. Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with at/by/with, etc.

   1. I cut the paper _______ a pair of scissors.  
   2. Last year they took a trip around the world _______ boat.  
   3. Who is the woman _______ short hair?  
   4. They are talking _______ the weather.  
   5. The car is _______ fire.  
   6. She’s listening to some music _______ Mozart.  
   7. The plane is flying _______ 600 miles an hour.  
   8. They’re _______ vacation.  
   9. Do you know the man _______ sunglasses?  

3. Complete the sentences. Use at/by/with, etc.

   1. In tennis, you hit the ball _______ a racket.  
   2. It’s cold today. Don’t go out _______ a coat.  
   3. Hamlet, Othello, and Macbeth are plays _______ William Shakespeare.  
   4. Do you know anything _______ computers?  
   5. My grandmother died _______ the age of 98.  
   6. How long does it take to go from New York to Los Angeles _______ plane?  
   7. I didn’t go to the football game, but I watched it _______ television.  
   8. My house is the one _______ the red door on the right.  
   9. These trains are very fast. They can travel _______ very high speeds.  
   10. You can’t get there _______ car. There’s no road.  
   11. Can you give me some information _______ hotels in this town?  
   12. I was arrested _______ two police officers and taken to the police station.  
   13. The buses here are very good. They’re almost always _______ time.  
   14. What would you like to drink _______ your meal?  
   15. We traveled from Los Angeles to Seattle _______ train.  
   16. The museum has some paintings _______ Frida Kahlo.
afraid of . . . , good at . . . , etc.
of/at/for, etc. (prepositions + -ing)

Afraid of . . . / good at . . . , etc. (adjective + preposition)

| Afraid of . . . | Are you afraid of dogs? |
| angry/mad at somebody | Why are you mad at me? What did I do? |
| angry/mad about something | Are you angry about last night? (= something that happened last night) |
| different from . . . | Lisa is very different from her sister. |
| fed up with . . . | I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job) |
| full of . . . | The room was full of people. |
| good at . . . | Are you good at math? |
| bad at . . . | Tina is very bad at tennis. |
| interested in . . . | I'm not interested in sports. |
| married to . . . | Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist) |
| nice/kind of somebody to . . . | It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much. |
| be nice/kind to somebody | David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me. |
| sorry about a situation | I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that. |
| sorry for/about doing something | I'm sorry for/about not calling you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't call you) |
| be/feel sorry for somebody | I feel sorry for them. They are in a very difficult situation. |

Of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (of/at/for, etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

- I'm not very good at telling stories.
- Are you fed up with doing the same thing every day?
- I'm sorry for not calling you yesterday.
- Thank you for helping me.
- Mark is thinking of buying a new car.
- Tom left without saying good-bye. (= he didn’t say good-bye)
- I'm sorry for/about not calling you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn’t call you)
- After doing the housework, they went shopping.
Exercises

UNIT 113

3.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with of/with/in, etc.

1. He's afraid of dogs.
2. She's interested in science.
3. She's married a soccer player.
4. She's very good at languages.
5. He's fed up with the weather.
6. A: Can I help you?
   B: Thanks, that's very kind of you.

3.2 Complete the sentences with in/of/with, etc.

1. I'm not interested in sports.
2. I'm not very good at sports.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very nice with me.
4. I'm sorry of your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't afraid of anything.
6. It was very nice of Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different from life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested in politics?
9. I feel sorry for her, but I can't help her.
10. Chris was angry about what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They are full of books.
12. What's wrong? Are you mad of me?

3.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very good at telling stories. (good / tell)
2. I wanted to go to the movies, but Paula wasn't interested in going. (interested / go)
3. Sue isn't very good at getting up in the morning. (good / get)
4. Let's go! I'm not fed up waiting. (fed up / wait)
5. I'm not very good at waking you up in the middle of the night. (sorry / wake)
6. Sorry I'm late! I didn't wake you up in the middle of the night. (thank you / wake)

3.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

1. (Tom left / he didn't say good-bye) Tom left without saying good-bye.
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
   Sue walked past me.
3. (don't do anything / ask me first)
   Don't ask me.
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
   I went out without locking the door.

3.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (interested)
   I'm interested in sports.
2. (afraid)
   I'm afraid of spiders.
3. (not very good)
   I'm not very good at mathematics.
4. (not interested)
   I'm not interested in politics.
5. (fed up)
   I'm fed up with this weather.
listen to . . ., look at . . ., etc.
(verb + preposition)

ask (somebody) for . . .
A man stopped me and asked me for money.

belong to . . .
Does this book belong to you? (= Is this your book?)

happen to . . .
I can't find my pen. What's happened to it?

listen to . . .
Listen to this music. It's great.

look at . . .
He's looking at his watch.
Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.

Look at me like that?

look for . . .
She's lost her key.
She's looking for it.

She's looking for it.

I'm looking for Sarah.
Have you seen her?

speak/talk to somebody about something
Did you talk to Paul about the problem?

(On the phone) Can I speak to Chris, please?

take care of . . .
When Pat is at work, a friend of hers takes care of her children.

Don't lose this book. Take care of it.

thank somebody for . . .
Thank you very much for your help.

think about . . .
He never thinks about (or of) other people.

Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new computer.

or think of . . .

wait for . . .
Wait for me. I'm almost ready.

write (to) . . .
I tried calling the company, but they didn't answer, so I wrote to them. (Or I wrote them)

Call, e-mail, and text
call somebody, e-mail somebody, text somebody (no preposition)
I have to call my parents tonight. (Not call to . . .)

A: Could you use your cell phone when you were in Europe?
B: No. My friends and family e-mailed me instead of calling.

Let Sam know where to meet us. E-mail or text him before he leaves work.

Depend
We say depend on . . .:
A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (Not it depends of)

You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:
A: Do you want to come out with us?
B: It depends where you're going. Or It depends on where you're going.
Exercises

1. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with to/for/at, etc.

1. She's looking at her watch.
2. He's listening to the radio.
3. They're waiting for a taxi.
4. Paul is talking to Jane.
5. They're looking at a picture.
6. Sue is looking at Tom.

2. Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for/about, etc.) if necessary.

1. Thank you very much for your help.
2. This isn't my umbrella. It belongs to a friend of mine.
3. Who's going to take care of your dog while you're out of town?
4. (on the phone) Can I speak to Steven Davis, please?
5. (on the phone) Thank you for calling. Good-bye.
6. Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
7. We're thinking about going to Australia next year.
8. We asked the waiter for tea, but he brought us coffee.
10. John was talking, but nobody was listening to what he was saying.
11. I want to take your picture. Please look at the camera and smile.
12. We waited for Karen until 2:00, but she didn't come.
13. What happened to Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
14. Don't forget to call your mother tonight.
15. He's alone all day. He never talks to anybody.
16. “How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?” “It depends on the room.”
17. It will be faster if you e-mail me, but you can also write me at this address.
18. Catherine is thinking about changing jobs.
19. I looked at the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
20. When you're sick, you need somebody to take care of you.
21. Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.
22. I don't want everyone to hear my conversation with Jane. I'll text her.

3. Answer these questions with It depends . . .

1. Do you want to go out with us?
   It depends where you're going.
2. Do you like to eat in restaurants?
   It depends on the restaurant.
3. Do you enjoy watching TV?
   It depends on the channel.
4. Can you do something for me?
   It depends on what you need.
5. Are you leaving town this weekend?
6. Can you lend me some money?
**go in, fall off, run away, etc.**

(phrasal verbs 1)

A *phrasal verb* is a verb (go/look/be, etc.) + in/out/up/down, etc.

### in
- Kate opened the door of the car and **got in.** (= into the car)
- I waited outside the store. I didn’t **go in.**

### out
- I went to the window and **looked out.**
- A car stopped, and a woman **got out.** (= out of the car)

### on
- The bus came, and I **got on.**

### up
- She **stood up** and left the room.
- I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- We **looked up** at the stars in the sky.

### down
- The picture **fell down.**
- Would you like to **sit down?**
- Lie down on the floor.

### away or off
- The thief **ran away.** (or . . . ran off)
- Emma got into the car and **drove away.** (or . . . drove off)

**be/go away** (= in/to another place)
- Tim has **gone away** for a few days.

### back
- Go away and don’t **come back!**
- We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.

**be back**
- Tim is away. He’ll **be back** on Monday.

### over
- There was an empty seat, so he **moved over.**
- I was tired of driving and **pulled over.**

### around
- Somebody shouted my name, so I **turned around.**
- We went for a long walk. After an hour we **turned around** and went back.
Exercises

115.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + in/out/up, etc.

- got - got - looked - looked - rode - sat - turned - went

1. I went to the window and looked out.
2. The door was open, so we went.
3. He heard a plane, so he got on his bike and rode.
4. She got on her bike and went.
5. I said hello, and he sat.
6. The bus stopped, and she turned.
7. There was a free seat, so she sat.
8. A car stopped, and two men got.

115.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back, etc.

1. “What happened to the picture on the wall?” “It fell down.”
2. Please don’t walk back. I have something to tell you.
3. Lisa heard a noise in back of her, so she turned around to see what it was.
4. I’m going down now to do some shopping. I’ll be back at 5:00.
5. I’m really tired. I’m going to lie back on the sofa.
6. I can’t see the movie screen. Would you please move forward?
7. Mark is from Utah. He lives in Boston now, but he wants to go back to Utah.
8. We don’t have a key to the house, so we can’t get in.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn’t get out.
10. A: “When are you going back?”
    B: “On the fifth. And I’m coming back on the twenty-fourth.”

115.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 242). Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + on/off/up, etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

- break - get - go - slow - take - work + along/on/off/up/down/over/out

1. I went to sleep at 10:00 and woke up at 8:00 the next morning.
2. “It’s time to go.” “Hang on a minute. I’m not ready yet.”
3. The train took off and finally stopped.
4. I like flying, but I’m always nervous when the plane takes off.
5. Tony doesn’t see his sister much. They don’t get along very well.
6. It’s difficult to hear you. Can you slow down a little?
7. This car isn’t very good. It has fallen down many times.
8. When babies try to walk, they sometimes fall over.
9. Ben isn’t in good shape because he doesn’t go to the gym anymore.
10. I tried to find a job, but I couldn’t slow down. It was impossible.
11. The fire alarm went off, and everyone had to leave the building.
Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off, etc.) has an object. For example:

**verb**   **object**
put on    your coat

take off  your shoes

You can say:
put on your coat
or put your coat on

You can say:
take off your shoes
or take your shoes off

*But it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off, etc.:
put it on (not put on it)

- It was cold, so I put on my coat.
  (or I put my coat on)
- Here’s your coat. Put it on.

*take them off (not take off them)

- I’m going to take off my shoes.
  (or take my shoes off)
- Your shoes are dirty. Take them off

---

**Some more phrasal verbs + object:**

**B**

**turn on / turn off** (lights, machines, faucets, etc.):
- It was dark, so I turned on the light.
  (or I turned the light on)
- I don’t want to watch this program. You can turn it off.

**pick up / put down:**
- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?
- I stopped reading and put my book down. (or put down my book)

**bring back / take back / give back / put back:**
- You can take my umbrella, but please bring it back.
- I took my new sweater back to the store. It was too small for me.
- I have Rachel’s keys. I have to give them back to her.
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.
Exercises

5.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

1. He turned on the light
2. She ____________________
3. He _____________________
4. She ____________________
5. He _____________________
6. She ____________________

5.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Simple Form</th>
<th>Progressive Form</th>
<th>Continuous Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I turned on the radio.</td>
<td>turned the radio on</td>
<td>turned it on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He put on his jacket.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She took her glasses off.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I picked up the phone.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They gave back the key.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We turned the lights off.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with it or them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring back</td>
<td>I wanted to watch something on television, so I brought it on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick up</td>
<td>My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to pick it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take back</td>
<td>There were some gloves on the floor, so I took them back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn off</td>
<td>When I finished working on the computer, I turned it off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn on</td>
<td>I picked up the phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill out</td>
<td>They tore down a lot of houses when they built the new road.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock over</td>
<td>That music is very loud. Can you knock it over?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put out</td>
<td>I knocked a glass and broke it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show around</td>
<td>“What does this word mean?” “Here's a dictionary. You can show it around.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw away</td>
<td>I want to keep these magazines. Please don't throw them away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn down</td>
<td>I gave up a glass and broke it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try on</td>
<td>I returned a pair of shoes at the store, but I didn't buy them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up</td>
<td>I visited a school last week. One of the teachers gave me a form and told me to give it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up</td>
<td>“Do you play the piano?” “No, I started to learn, but I gave it up after a month.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock over</td>
<td>Somebody gave me a form and told me to knock it over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show around</td>
<td>Smoking isn't allowed here. Please put away your cigarette.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 243). Complete the sentences using one of the following verbs. Sometimes you will also need to use it/them/me.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fill out</td>
<td>They tore down a lot of houses when they built the new road.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock over</td>
<td>That music is very loud. Can you knock it over?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put out</td>
<td>I knocked a glass and broke it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show around</td>
<td>“What does this word mean?” “Here's a dictionary. You can show it around.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw away</td>
<td>I want to keep these magazines. Please don't throw them away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn down</td>
<td>I gave up a glass and broke it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try on</td>
<td>I returned a pair of shoes at the store, but I didn't buy them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up</td>
<td>I visited a school last week. One of the teachers gave me a form and told me to give it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up</td>
<td>“Do you play the piano?” “No, I started to learn, but I gave it up after a month.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock over</td>
<td>Somebody gave me a form and told me to knock it over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show around</td>
<td>Smoking isn't allowed here. Please put away your cigarette.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Active and passive

#### Present and past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple present</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We make butter from milk.</td>
<td>Butter is made from milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody cleans these rooms every day.</td>
<td>These rooms are cleaned every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People never invite me to parties.</td>
<td>I am never invited to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do they make butter?</td>
<td>How is butter made?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody stole my car last week.</td>
<td>My car was stolen last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody stole my keys yesterday.</td>
<td>My keys were stolen yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They didn’t invite me to the party.</td>
<td>I wasn’t invited to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did they build these houses?</td>
<td>When were these houses built?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are building a new airport at this time. (= it isn’t finished)</td>
<td>A new airport is being built at this time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are building some new houses near the river.</td>
<td>Some new houses are being built near the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport. (= it wasn’t finished at that time)</td>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was being built.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Simple past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present continuous</th>
<th>Past continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They are building a new airport.</td>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Look! They have painted the door.</td>
<td>Look! The door has been painted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These shirts are clean. Somebody has washed them.</td>
<td>These shirts are clean. They have been washed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My watch can’t be repaired.</td>
<td>My car has been stolen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Past perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Somebody said that they had stolen her car.</td>
<td>Somebody said that her car had been stolen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Will / can / must / have to, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Somebody will clean the office tomorrow.</td>
<td>The office will be cleaned tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody must clean the office at night.</td>
<td>The office must be cleaned at night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think they’ll invite you to the party.</td>
<td>I think you’ll be invited to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They can’t repair my watch.</td>
<td>My watch can’t be repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You should wash this sweater by hand.</td>
<td>This sweater should be washed by hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are going to build a new airport.</td>
<td>A new airport is going to be built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody has to wash these clothes.</td>
<td>These clothes have to be washed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They had to take the injured man to the hospital.</td>
<td>The injured man had to be taken to the hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>Simple past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant (ment)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said (sed)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation
APPENDIX 3
Irregular verbs in groups

The simple past and past participle are the same:

1. cost → cost
   cut → cut
   hit → hit
   hurt → hurt
   let → let
   put → put
   quit → quit
   shut → shut
   lend → lent
   send → sent
   spend → spent
   build → built
   keep → kept
   sleep → slept
   feel → felt
   leave → left
   meet → met
   mean → meant (ment)*

2. bring → brought
   buy → bought
   fight → fought
   think → thought
   catch → caught
   teach → taught
   sell → sold
   tell → told

3. eat → ate
   fall → fell
   forget → forgot
   get → got
   give → gave
   see → saw
   take → took

4. blow → blew
   grow → grew
   know → knew
   throw → threw
   fly → flew
   draw → drew
   show → showed

5. begin → began
   drink → drank
   swim → swam
   ring → rang
   sing → sang
   run → ran

6. come → came
   become → became

* pronunciation

The simple past and past participle are different:

1. break → broke → broken
   choose → chose → chosen
   speak → spoke → spoken
   steal → stole → stolen
   wake → woke → woken

2. drive → drove → driven
   ride → rode → ridden
   rise → rose → risen
   write → wrote → written
   beat → beat → beaten
   bite → bit → bitten
   hide → hid → hidden

3. eat → ate → eaten
   fall → fell → fallen
   forget → forgot → forgotten
   get → got → gotten
   give → gave → give
   see → saw → seen
   take → took → taken

4. blow → blew → blown
   grow → grew → grown
   know → knew → known
   throw → threw → thrown
   fly → flew → flown
   draw → drew → drawn
   show → showed → shown

5. begin → began → begun
   drink → drank → drunk
   swim → swam → swum
   ring → rang → rung
   sing → sang → sung
   run → ran → run

6. come → came → come
   become → became → become
APPENDIX 4

Short forms (he’s / I’d / don’t, etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce I am as one word. The short form (I’m) is a way of writing this:

- I am → I’m
- it is → it’s
- they have → they’ve, etc.

When we write short forms, we use ’ (an apostrophe):
I’m, he’s, you have → you’ve, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am → ’m</th>
<th>I’m</th>
<th>he’s</th>
<th>she’s</th>
<th>it’s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is → ’s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are → ’re</td>
<td>I’ve</td>
<td>she’s</td>
<td>it’s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have → ’ve</td>
<td>he’s</td>
<td>she’s</td>
<td>it’s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has → ’s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had → ’d</td>
<td>I’d</td>
<td>he’d</td>
<td>she’d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will → ’ll</td>
<td>I’ll</td>
<td>he’ll</td>
<td>she’ll</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would → ’d</td>
<td>I’d</td>
<td>he’d</td>
<td>she’d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’m feeling tired this morning.
- “Do you like this jacket?” “Yes, it’s nice.”
- “Where are your friends?” “They’ve gone home.”

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she, etc.:

- I’ve got some new shoes.
- We’ll probably go out tonight.
- It’s 10:00. You’re late again.

’s = is or has:
- She’s going out tonight. (she’s going = she is going)
- She’s gone out. (she’s gone = she has gone)

’d = would or had:
- A: What would you like to eat?
  B: I’d like a salad, please. (I’d like = I would like)
- I told the police that I’d lost my passport. (I’d lost = I had lost)

Do not use ’m/s/’d, etc. at the end of a sentence (see Unit 41):
- “Are you tired?” “Yes, I am.” (not Yes, I’m.)
- She isn’t tired, but he is. (not he’s)

4.3 We use short forms with I/you/he/she, etc., but you can use short forms (especially ‘s) with other words, too:

- Who’s your favorite singer? (= who is)
- What’s the time? (= what is)
- There’s a big tree in the yard. (= there is)
- My sister’s working in London. (= my sister is working)
- Paul’s gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
- What color’s your car? (= What color is your car?)
APPENDIX 4
Short forms (he's / I'd / don't, etc.)

4.4 Negative short forms (see Unit 44):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Short Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isn't</td>
<td>(= is not)</td>
<td>can't</td>
<td>(= cannot)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren't</td>
<td>(= are not)</td>
<td>don't</td>
<td>(= do not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasn't</td>
<td>(= was not)</td>
<td>doesn't</td>
<td>(= does not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren't</td>
<td>(= were not)</td>
<td>didn't</td>
<td>(= did not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasn't</td>
<td>(= has not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven't</td>
<td>(= have not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hadn't</td>
<td>(= had not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We went to her house, but she wasn’t at home.
- “Where’s David?” “I don’t know. I haven’t seen him.”
- You work all the time. You shouldn’t work so hard.
- I won’t be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 ‘s (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

1. 's = is or has (see section 4.2 of this appendix)
2. let’s = let us (see Unit 37)
   - It’s a beautiful day. Let’s go outside. (= Let us go outside.)
3. Kate’s camera = her camera
   - my brother’s car = his car
   - the manager’s office = his/her office, etc.
   (see Unit 65)

Compare:

- Kate’s camera was very expensive. (Kate’s camera = her camera)
- Kate’s a very good photographer. (Kate’s = Kate is)
- Kate’s got a new camera. (Kate’s got = Kate has got)
### 5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches, etc.)

**noun + s (plural) (see Unit 67)**
- bird → birds
- mistake → mistakes
- hotel → hotels

**verb + s (he/she/it -s) (see Unit 5)**
- think → thinks
- live → lives
- remember → remembers

**but**

+ **es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x**
- bus → buses
- dish → dishes
- watch → watches
- box → boxes

**also**
- potato → potatoes
- do → does
- tomato → tomatoes
- go → goes

- **-f / -fe → -ves**
- shelf → shelves
- tomato → tomatoes
- go → goes

### 5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied, etc.)

**-y → -ies**
- study → studies (not studys)
- story → stories
- city → cities
- marry → marries
- fly → flies

**-y → -ied (see Unit 11)**
- try → tried
- marry → married
- copy → copied

**-y → -ier / -iest (see Units 88, 91)**
- easy → easier/easiest (not easier/easyest)
- happy → happier/happiest
- heavy → heavier/heaviest
- lucky → luckier/luckiest
- funny → funnier/funniest

**-y → -ily (see Unit 87)**
- easy → easily (not easily)
- happy → happily
- heavy → heavily
- lucky → luckily

**y** does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:
- holiday → holidays (not holidayses)
- enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed
- stay → stay/stayed
- buy → buys
- key → keys

**but**
- say → said
- pay → paid (irregular verbs)
Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive, etc.) → -ing
make → making  write → writing  come → coming  dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie → -ying:
lie → lying  die → dying  tie → tying

dance → dancing

stop → stopped, big → bigger, etc.

Vowels and consonants:
Vowel letters: a e i o u
Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a vowel + a consonant. For example: stop, big, get.
Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, the consonant (p/g/t, etc.) becomes pp/gg/tt, etc.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+C</th>
<th>V+C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>STOP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>RUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>GET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>SWIM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>BIG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>HOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>THIN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

V = vowel  C = consonant

This does not happen:

1. if the word ends in two consonant letters (C + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C+C</th>
<th>C+C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>HELP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>WORK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>FAST</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+V+C</th>
<th>V+V+C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>NEED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>WAIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>CHEAP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stress</th>
<th>stress</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>happen</td>
<td>HAP-pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
<td>VIS-it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>re-MEM-ber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>pre-FER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>be-GIN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>enjoying/enjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>snowing/snowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few</td>
<td>fewer/fewest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (see Unit 115).

**out**
- **look out** / **watch out** = be careful
  - Look out! There’s a car coming.
- **work out** = exercise (to become stronger or more fit)
  - Sarah works out at the gym two or three times a week.

**on**
- **come on** = be quick / hurry
  - Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.
- **go on** = continue
  - I’m sorry I interrupted. Go on. (= continue what you were saying)
  - How long will this hot weather go on?
- **keep on** = continue (talking, etc.)
  - I asked them to be quiet, but they kept on talking.
- **hold on** = wait
  - Can you hold on a minute? (= can you wait?)

**off**
- **take off** = leave the ground (for planes)
  - The plane took off 20 minutes late but arrived on time.
- **go off** = explode (a bomb, etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock, etc.)
  - A bomb went off and caused a lot of damage.
  - A car alarm goes off if somebody tries to break into the car.

**up**
- **clean up** = make neat or clean
  - After the party, it took two hours to clean up.
- **give up** = stop trying
  - I know it’s difficult, but don’t give up. (= don’t stop trying)
- **grow up** = become an adult
  - What does your son want to do when he grows up?
- **hurry up** = do something more quickly
  - Hurry up! We don’t have much time.
- **speak up** = speak more loudly
  - I can’t hear you. Can you speak up, please?
- **wake up** = stop sleeping
  - I often wake up in the middle of the night.

**down**
- **slow down** = go more slowly
  - You’re driving too fast. Slow down!
- **break down** = stop working (for cars, machines, etc.)
  - Sue was very late because her car broke down.

**along**
- **get along** = be together without problems
  - Sam doesn’t visit his parents often. He doesn’t get along with his father.

**over**
- **fall over** = lose your balance
  - I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.
APPENDIX 7 Phrasal verbs + object
(put out a fire / try on clothes, etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (see Unit 116).

fill out a form = complete a form
- Can you fill out this form, please?

put out a fire, a cigarette, etc.
- The fire department arrived and put the fire out.

cross out a mistake, a word, etc.
- If you make a mistake, cross it out.

try on clothes = put on clothes to see if they fit you
- (in a store) Where can I try these pants on?

give up something = stop doing/having something
- Sue gave up her job when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
- Tom’s doctor told him he had to give up smoking.

look up a word in a dictionary, etc.
- I didn’t know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heat, etc. = make it louder or warmer
- Can you turn the radio up? I can’t hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping
- I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you wake me up at 6:30?

tear down a building = demolish it
- They are going to tear down the school and build a new one.

turn down the TV, radio, music, heat, etc. = make it quieter or less warm
- The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?

knock over a cup, a glass, a person, etc.
- Be careful. Don’t knock your cup over.

throw away garbage, things you don’t want
- These apples are bad. Should I throw them away?
- Don’t throw away that picture. I want it.

put something away = put it in the place where you usually keep it
- After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.

pay somebody back = give back money that you borrowed
- Thank you for lending me the money. I’ll pay you back next week.

show somebody around = take somebody on a tour of a place
- We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us around.
Additional Exercises

List of exercises:

1-2  am/is/are  Units 1–2
3  Present continuous  Units 3–4
4  Simple present  Units 5–7
5–7  Simple present, am/is/are and have (got)  Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
8–9  Present continuous and simple present  Units 3–8
10–13  was/were and simple past  Units 10–12
14  Simple past and past continuous  Units 11–14
15  Present and past  Units 3–14
16–18  Present perfect  Units 16–21
19–22  Present perfect and simple past  Units 19–21
23  Present, past, and present perfect  Units 3–21
24–27  Passive  Units 22–23, Appendix 1
28  Future  Units 26–29
29  Past, present, and future  Units 3–21, 26–29
32  -ing and to . . .  Units 52–56, 106, 113
33–34  a and the  Units 66, 70–74
35  Prepositions  Units 104–109, 112

**am/is/are**  
Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + *is/isn’t/are/aren’t.*

1. The windows are open.
2. Lisa isn’t happy.
3. Kate _______
4. ______
5. No, thank you.
6. ______
7. The hotel ______
8. ______

**Units 1–2**
Complete the sentences.

1. "Are you hungry?" “No, but I’m _thirsty_."
2. “How are your parents?” “They’re fine.”
3. “Is Anna at home?” “No, _she_ is at work.”
4. "Where is Paul from? _American or Canadian?_ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees Celsius.
5. “Are you a teacher?” “No, _I_ am a student.”
6. “Where’s your car?” "Green."
8. "Where’s your car? _in the parking lot?_ tired?” “No, I’m fine.”
9. "These shoes are nice. How _?_ “Seventy-five dollars.”

Present continuous (I’m working / are you working?, etc.)

Use the words in parentheses to write sentences.

A: Where are your parents?
B: ___________ TV. (they / watch / TV)

A: Paula is going out.
B: Where’s she going? (where / she / go?)

A: Where’s David?
B: ___________ (he / take / a shower)

A: ___________ (the children / play?)
B: No, they’re asleep.

A: ___________ (it / rain?)
B: No, not any more.

A: Where are Sue and Steve?
B: ___________ (they / come / now)

A: ___________ (why / you / stand / here?)
B: ___________ (I / wait / for somebody)

Simple present (I work / she doesn’t work / do you work?, etc.)

Complete the sentences. Use the simple present.

1. Sue always _gets_ to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2. We don’t _watch_ TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3. How often _do you wash_ your hair? (you / wash)
4. I want to go to the movies, but _not want_ to go. (Sam / not / want)
5. _not want_ to go out tonight? (you / want)
6. ___________ near here? (Helen / live)
7. _not go_ a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8. I enjoy traveling, but ___________ very much. (I / not / travel)
9. What time ___________ in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10. My parents are usually at home at night. ___________ very often. (they / not / go out)
11. ___________ work at 5:00. (Tom / always / leave)
12. A: What ___________ ?
   B: ___________ in a hotel. (Julia / do)
   (she / work)
5 Read the questions and Claire's answers. Then write sentences about Claire.

1. Are you married?
   Claire: No.
   Sentence: She isn't married.

2. Do you live in Houston?
   Claire: Yes.
   Sentence: She lives in Houston.

3. Are you a student?
   Claire: Yes.

4. Do you have a car?
   Claire: Yes.

5. Do you go out a lot?
   Claire: Yes.

6. Do you have a lot of friends?
   Claire: No.

7. Do you like Houston?
   Claire: Yes.

8. Do you like to dance?
   Claire: No.

9. Are you interested in sports?
   Claire: Yes.

6 Complete the questions.

1. What's your name?
   Brian.

2. Where was married?
   Yes, I am.
   On State Street.

3. How any children?
   Yes, a daughter.
   She's three.

4. How your job?
   I'm 29.
   I work in a supermarket.

5. Do you hate it?
   No, I hate it.
   Yes, I do.

6. Can go by car?
   No, I usually go by bus.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1. (Sarah often / tennis)
   Sarah often plays tennis.

2. (my parents / a new car)
   My parents have a new car.
   OR
   My parents have got a new car.

3. (my shoes / dirty)
   My shoes are dirty.

4. (Sonia / 32 years old)
   Sonia is 32 years old.

5. (I / two sisters)
   I have two sisters.

6. (we often / TV at night)
   We often watch TV at night.

7. (Jane never / a hat)
   Jane never wears a hat.

8. (my car / a flat tire)
   My car has a flat tire.

9. (these flowers / beautiful)
   These flowers are beautiful.

10. (Mary / German very well)
   Mary speaks German very well.
**Present continuous (I'm working) and simple present (I work)**

Complete the sentences.

1. Please be quiet.  I'm working... (I/work).
2. **Do you go** (you/go) to the movies a lot?
3. What **(you/cook)**?
4. **(I/play)** the piano very well.
5. now. Good-bye!
6. **(it/rain).** Can I take this umbrella?
7. (I/not/watch) TV very much.
8. **(we/look)** for the museum.
9. What's this word? How **(you/pronounce)** it?

**Which is right?**

1. "Are you speaking? Do you speak English?" "Yes, a little." *(Do you speak is right)*
2. Sometimes we're going / we go away on weekends.
3. It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. *(You meet Kate in the street)* Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you taking / do you take a vacation?
6. Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes children's books.
7. I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. "Where are Michael and Jane?" "They're watching / They watch TV in the living room."
9. Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn't at home right now. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12. "Would you like some coffee?" "No, thanks. I'm not drinking / I don't drink coffee."
10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1. I got up early and ______ took a shower.
2. Tom was tired last night, so he ___________ to bed early.
3. I _______ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4. Kate got married when she ___________ 23.
5. Helen is learning to drive. She ___________ her first lesson yesterday.
7. “Where did you buy that book?” “It was a present. Jane ___________ it to me.”
8. We ___________ hungry, so we had something to eat.
9. “Did you enjoy the movie?” “Yes, I ___________ it was very good.”
10. “Did Andy come to your party?” “No, we ___________ him, but he didn’t come.”

11 Look at the questions and Kevin’s answers. Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.

Kevin

When you were a child...

A: Were you tall? No.
B: He wasn’t tall.

A: Did you like school? Yes.
B: He liked school.

A: Were you good at sports? Yes.

A: Did you play basketball? Yes.

A: Did you work hard at school? No.

A: Did you have a lot of friends? Yes.

A: Did you have a bicycle? No.

A: Were you a quiet child? No.

12 Complete the questions.

1. __________ a nice vacation?
2. __________ there?
3. __________________ place there?
4. __________________ the Bahamas?
5. __________________ good?
6. __________________ back?

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative, or question).

1. It was a good party. ______ enjoyed it. (I / enjoy)
2. “________ the dishes?” (you / do) “No, ______ time.” (I / have)
3. “Did you call Adam?” “No, I’m sorry, __________ it.” (I / forget)
4. I like your new watch. Where __________ it? (you / get)
5. I saw Lucy at the party, but __________ to her. (I / speak)
6. A: __________________ a nice weekend? (you / have)
   B: Yes, I visited some friends of mine.

7. Paul wasn’t well yesterday, so __________ to work. (he / go)

8. “Is Mary here?” “Yes, __________ five minutes ago.” (she / arrive)

9. Where __________ before he moved here? (Robert / live)

10. The restaurant wasn’t expensive. __________ very much. (the meal / cost)
Simple past (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or past continuous.

1. It was raining (rain) when we went (go) out.

2. When I arrived at the office, Jane and Paul were working (work) at their desks.

3. I (open) the window because it was hot.

4. The phone was ringing (ring) when Sue was cooking (cook) dinner.

5. It was raining (rain) when we went (go) out.

6. Tom was looking (look) out of the window when the accident happened (happen).

7. Richard had a book in his hand, but he was not reading (not/read) it. He was watching (watch) TV.

8. Erin bought a magazine, but she was not reading (not/read) it. She didn’t have time.

9. I finished (finish) lunch, paid (pay) the bill, and left (leave) the restaurant.

10. I saw (see) Kate this morning. I walked (walk) along the street and she was waiting (wait) for the bus.
Present and past

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

- simple present (I work/drive, etc.)
- present continuous (I am working/driving, etc.)
- simple past (I worked/drove, etc.)
- past continuous (I was working/driving, etc.)

1. You can turn off the TV. I’m not watching (not / watch) it.
2. Last night Jenny fell (fall) asleep while she was reading (read).
3. Listen! Somebody is playing (play) the piano.
4. “Do you have my key?” “No, I didn’t give (give) it back to you.”
5. David is very lazy. He doesn’t like (not / like) to work hard.
6. Where did your parents go (your parents / go) on vacation last year?
7. I saw (see) Diane yesterday. She drove (drive) her new car.
8. A: Are you watching (you / watch) TV very much?
   B: No, I don’t have a TV.
9. A: What did you do (you / do) at 6:00 last Sunday morning?
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn’t at home very much. He goes (go) out a lot.
11. I’m trying (try) to find a job right now. It’s very hard.
12. I’m tired this morning. I didn’t sleep (not / sleep) very well last night.

Present perfect (I have done / she has been, etc.)

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Who’s that man?
   I’ve never seen (him / see) him before.
2. Is this a good book?
   I’ve never read (it / read) it.
3. I’m looking for Julia. Have you seen (her / see) her?
4. More coffee?
   Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.
   No, thanks. I’ve had (I / have) enough.
Complete the sentences (1, 2, or 3 words).

1. Mark and Liz are married. They _have been__ married for five years.
2. David has been watching TV _since_ 5:00.
3. Martin is at work. He _______________________________ at work since 8:30.
4. “Did you just arrive in Miami?” “No, I’ve been here _______________________ five days.”
5. I’ve known Helen ____________________________, we were in high school.
7. George has had the same job ___________________________ 20 years.
8. Some friends of ours are staying with us. They ______________________ here since Monday.

Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1. I’ve never __ridden a horse__
2. I’ve ___been to Montreal___ many times.
3. I’ve just __________________________
4. I’ve __________________________
   (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5. I haven’t ___________________________ yet.
6. I’ve never ___________________________
7. I’ve ___________________________ since
8. I’ve ___________________________ for

The weather is terrible today. It ___________________________ all day.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES 251
Present perfect (I have done, etc.) and
simple past (I did, etc.)

19 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

1. A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. I __haven't been__ there.

2. A: Have you seen Kate?
   B: Yes, I __saw__ her five minutes ago.

3. A: That’s a nice sweater. Is it new?
   B: Yes, I __bought__ it last week.

4. A: Are you tired this morning?
   B: Yes, I __woke up__ late last night.

5. A: Is the new French movie good?
   B: Yes, really good. I __watched__ it three times.

6. A: Do you like your new job?
   B: I __like__ it. My first day is next Monday.

7. A: The weather isn’t very nice today, is it?
   B: No, but it __will become__ nice yesterday.

8. A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
   B: I don’t think so. I __saw__ her there.

9. A: Is your son still in school?
   B: No, he __graduated__ college two years ago.

10. A: Is Silvia married?
    B: Yes, she __married__ married for five years.

11. A: Have you heard of George Washington?
    B: Of course. He __was__ the first president of the United States.

20 Write sentences with the present perfect or simple past.

1. A: Have you been to Thailand?
   B: Yes, __I went there last year__ (I / go / there / last year)

2. A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. __I’ve never been there__ (I / never / there)

3. A: Where is Paul these days?
   B: He __lives__ in Chicago. He __lives__ there __since last May__ (live / there / since last May)

4. A: Has Catherine gone home?
   B: Yes, __she left home__ (she / leave / at 4:00)

5. A: New York is my favorite city.
   B: It is? __I’ve visited it many times__ (how many times / you / there?)

   B: Yes, __I was really tired__ (I / tired / all day)

7. A: I can’t find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: __It’s on the table__ (it / on the table / last night)

8. A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant on First Street?
   B: Yes, __I went there a few times__ (I / eat / there a few times)

9. A: Paula and Sue are here.
   B: Are they? __They’re a lot of times__ (what time / they / get / here?)
Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences.

1. A: **Have you been** to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When **______________** the last time?
   B: Two years ago.

2. A: Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long **______________** it?
   B: It's new. I **______________** it yesterday.

3. A: Where do you live?
   B: On Maple Street.
   A: How long **______________** there?
   B: Five years. Before that **______________** on Mill Road.
   A: How long **______________** on Mill Road?
   B: About three years.

4. A: What do you do?
   B: I work in a store.
   A: How long **______________** there?
   B: Nearly two years.
   A: What **______________** before that?
   B: I **______________** a taxi driver.

Write sentences about yourself.

1. (yesterday morning) **I was late for work yesterday morning.**
2. (last night)
3. (yesterday afternoon)
4. (... days ago)
5. (last week)
6. (last year)
Present, past, and present perfect

Units 3–21

23 Which is right?

1. “Is Sue working? (C)” “No, she’s on vacation.”
   A Does Sue work?  B Is working Sue?  C Is Sue working?  D Does work Sue?

   A lives your uncle  B does your uncle live  C your uncle lives  D does live your uncle

3. I speak Italian, but ________ French.
   A I no speak  B I’m not speaking  C I doesn’t speak  D I don’t speak

4. “Where’s Tom?” ________ a shower at the moment.”
   A He’s taking  B He take  C He takes  D He has taken

5. Why ________ angry with me yesterday?
   A were you  B was you  C you were  D have you been

6. My favorite movie is Cleo’s Dream. ________ it four times.
   A I’m seeing  B I see  C I was seeing  D I’ve seen

7. I ________ out last night. I was too tired.
   A don’t go  B didn’t went  C didn’t go  D haven’t gone

8. Liz is from Chicago. She ________ there all her life.
   A is living  B has lived  C lives  D lived

9. My friend ________ for me when I arrived.
   A waited  B has waited  C was waiting  D has been waiting

    A do you learn  B are you learning  C you are learning  D have you been learning

11. Joel is Canadian, but he lives in Peru. He has been there ________.
    A for three years  B since three years  C three years ago  D during three years

    A has Lisa called  B Lisa has called  C did Lisa call  D is Lisa calling

13. What ________ when you saw her?
    A did Sue wear  B was Sue wearing  C has Sue worn  D was wearing Sue

14. “Can you drive?” “No, ________ a car, but I want to learn.”
    A I never drive  B I’m never driving  C I’ve never driven  D I was never driving

15. I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she ________ me.
    A didn’t see  B don’t see  C hasn’t seen  D didn’t saw
Complete the sentences.

1. These houses were built (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a movie theater here, but the building was (damage) in a fire and had to be (tear down).
2. This bridge was (build) in 1955. Now it is (use) by hundreds of people every day. The bridge was (paint) now.
3. This street was (call) Kennedy Street. It used to be (call) Hill Street, but the name was (change) a few years ago.
4. This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles were (make) here since 1961. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles were (produce) here every year.

Complete the sentences.

1. We were invited (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
2. The museum is very popular. Every year it is (visit) by thousands of people.
3. Many buildings were (damaged) in the storm last week.
4. A new road is going to be (built) next year.
5. “Where's your jacket?” “It was (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.”
6. She's famous now, but in a few years her name will be (forget).
7. “Are you happy with your washing machine?” “Not really. It was (repaired) three times since we bought it.”
8. Milk should be (kept) in a fridge.
9. Have you / ever / bite) by a snake?
10. My bag was (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1. Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
2. Somebody stole my car last week. My car has been stolen.
3. Somebody wants you on the phone. You need to be on the phone.
4. Somebody has eaten all the bananas. All the bananas have been eaten.
5. Somebody will repair the machine. The machine will be repaired.
6. Somebody is watching us. We are being watched.
7. Somebody has to do the housework. The housework has to be done.
27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1. They **are building** (build) a new airport now.
2. These shirts are clean now. They **have been washed** OR **were washed** (wash).
3. “How did you fall?” “Somebody ________________ (push) me.”
4. “How did you fall?” “I ________________ (push).”
5. I can’t find my bag. Somebody ________________ (take) it!
6. My watch is broken. It ________________ (repair) at the moment.
7. Who ________________ (invent) the camera?
8. When ________________ (the camera / invent)?
9. These shirts are clean now. They ________________ (wash).
10. These shirts are clean now. I ________________ (wash) them.
11. The letter was for me, so why ________________ (they / send) it to you?
12. The information will ________________ (send) to you as soon as possible.

---

28 Which is the best alternative?

1. We’re **having (B)** a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   A We have    B We’re having    C We’ll have

2. Do you know about Karen? ________________ her job. She told me last week.
   A She quits    B She’s going to quit    C She’ll quit

3. There’s a program on TV that I want to watch. ________________ in five minutes.
   A It starts    B It’s starting    C It will start

4. The weather is nice now, but I think ________________ later.
   A it rains    B it’s raining    C it will rain

5. “What ________________ next weekend?” “Nothing. I have no plans.”
   A do you do    B are you doing    C will you do

6. “When you see Tina, can you ask her to call me?” “OK, ________________ her.”
   A I ask    B I’m going to ask    C I’ll ask

7. “What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?” ________________ tea, please.”
   A I have    B I’m going to have    C I’ll have

8. Don’t take that newspaper away. ________________ it.
   A I read    B I’m going to read    C I’ll read

9. Rachel is sick, so ________________ to the party tomorrow night.
   A she doesn’t come    B she isn’t coming    C she won’t come

10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time ________________?
    A does her train arrive    B is her train going to arrive    C is her train arriving

11. “Will you be at home tomorrow night?” “No ________________.”
    A I go out    B I’m going out    C I’ll go out

12. ________________ you tomorrow?” “Yes, fine.”
    A Do I call    B Am I going to call    C Shall I call

---

256 ADDITIONAL EXERCISES
Past, present, and future

Complete the sentences.

A: Did you go (you / go) out last night?
B: No, (you / stay) home.
A: What (you / do)?
B: (I / watch) TV.
A: (you / go) out tomorrow night?
B: Yes, (I / go) to the movies.
A: What movie (you / see)?
B: (I / not / know). (I / not / decide) yet.

2. A: Are you visiting here?
B: Yes, we are.
A: How long (you / be) here?
B: (we / arrive) yesterday.
A: And how long (you / stay)?
B: Until the end of next week.
A: And (you / like) it here?
B: Yes, (we / have) a wonderful time.

3. A: Oh, (Karen / call) while you were out.
B: (she / always / call) when I'm not here.
A: No, but (she / leave) a message?
B: OK, (I / call) her now.
A: (you / know) her number?
B: It's in my address book. (I / get) it for you.

4. A: (I / go) out with Chris and Steve tonight.
B: Yes, where (you / want) to come with us?
A: To the Italian restaurant on North Avenue. (you / ever / eat) there?
B: Yes, (I / be) there two or three times. In fact I (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

5. A: (I / lose) my glasses again.
B: (you / see) them?
A: Well, (I / come) in.
B: (you / wear) them when
A: (I / not / wear) them now, so where are they?
B: (you / look) in the kitchen?
A: No, (I / go) and look now.
30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time (1) ______________________ (we / meet). It was our first day at high school, and (2) ______________________ (we / sit) next to each other in the first class. (3) ______________________ (we / not / know) any other students in our class, and so (4) ______________________ (we / become) friends. We found that (5) ______________________ (we / like) the same things, especially music and sports, and so (6) ______________________ (we / spend) a lot of time together. (7) ______________________ (we / finish) school five years ago, but (8) ______________________ (we / meet) as often as we can. For the last six months Carolyn (9) ______________________ (be) in Mexico – right now (10) ______________________ (she / work) in a school as a teaching assistant. (11) ______________________ (she / come) back to the States next month, and when (12) ______________________ (she / come) back, (13) ______________________ (we / have) lots of things to talk about. (14) ______________________ (it / be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are from London. They are traveling around the world. Read the e-mails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mom and Dad,

We're in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world trip! (1) ______________________ (we / arrive) here yesterday, and now (2) ______________________ (we / stay) at a hotel near the airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) ______________________ (we / enjoy) it. (4) ______________________ (we / watch) some movies and (5) ______________________ (sleep) for a few hours, which is unusual for me – usually (6) ______________________ (I / not / sleep) well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) ______________________ (we / not / do) anything special, but tomorrow (8) ______________________ (we / go) to Hollywood (9) ______________________ (see) the movie studios. (10) ______________________ (we / not / decide) yet what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) ______________________ (want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer (12) ______________________ (go) south to San Diego.

I hope all is well with you – (13) ______________________ (I / send) you another e-mail next week.

Love,

Nick
Dear Nick,

Thanks for your e-mail. It's good to hear that you / have a good time. We're fine - Ellie and Jo (study) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work, and last week he / have a lot of important meetings. He's a little tired - I think he / need a good rest.

Keep in touch!

Love,
Mom

A month later . . .

Hi Mom and Dad,

we / be) in California for a month now.
we / get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after see) many wonderful places. I think the place I / like) most was Yosemite National Park – it's beautiful there and we / go) cycling a lot. The day before we / leave), Jon have) an accident on his bike. Luckily he / not / injure), but the bike damage).
we / change) our travel plans since my last message: now we / leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday). we / stay) there for a week before fly) to New Zealand.
that / be) different, I'm sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.

Love,
Nick

Hi Nick,

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (finish) their exams yesterday – I / let you know when we / get) the results.

We're all OK. Dad and I (look) forward to our vacation next month. (we / go) to Italy for two weeks – (we / send) you an e-mail from there.

Take care!

Love,
Mom
32 Which is correct?

1. Don't forget **to turn (B)** off the light before you go out.
   A turn  B to turn  C turning

2. It's late. I should __________________________ now.
   A go  B to go  C going

3. I'm sorry, but I don't have time __________________________ to you now.
   A for talking  B to talk  C talking

4. Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys __________________________ .
   A cook  B to cook  C cooking

5. We've decided __________________________ away for a few days.
   A go  B to go  C going

6. You're making too much noise. Can you please stop __________________________ ?
   A shout  B to shout  C shouting

7. Would you like __________________________ to dinner on Sunday?
   A come  B to come  C coming

8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me __________________________ you.
   A help  B to help  C helping

9. There's a swimming pool near my house. I go __________________________ every day.
   A to swim  B to swimming  C swimming

10. Did you use a dictionary __________________________ the letter?
    A to translate  B for translating  C for translate

11. I'd love __________________________ a car like yours.
    A have  B to have  C having

12. Could you __________________________ me with this bag, please?
    A help  B to help  C helping

13. I don't mind __________________________ here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
    A sit  B to sit  C sitting

14. Do you want __________________________ you?
    A that I help  B me to help  C me helping

15. I usually read the newspaper before __________________________ work.
    A start  B to start  C starting

16. I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me __________________________ better.
    A feel  B to feel  C feeling

17. Shall I call the restaurant __________________________ a table?
    A for reserve  B for reserving  C to reserve

18. Tom looked at me without __________________________ anything.
    A say  B saying  C to say
Complete the sentences.

1. Can you pass **the sugar**, please?

2. Do you have __________ ?

3. Do we have any milk?

4. What do you do?

5. I don’t feel very well. I don’t want to go to __________

6. What did you do last night?

7. Shall we walk home?

8. Can you play __________ ?

9. I’m interested in __________

10. What’s the difference between those cars?

   Nothing, they’re __________
34 Write *a/an* or *the* if necessary. *If a/an/the* are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

1. Who is *the* best player on your team?
2. I don't watch *--* TV very often.
3. “Is there *a* bank near here?” “Yes, at *the* end of this block.”
4. I can't ride *--* horse.
5. *--* sky is very clear tonight.
6. Do you live here, or are you *--* tourist?
7. What did you have for *--* lunch?
8. Who was *--* first president of *--* United States?
9. “What time is it?” “I don’t know. I don’t have *--* watch.”
10. I'm sorry, but I’ve forgotten your name. I can never remember *--* names.
11. What time is *--* next train to Boston?
12. Kate never sends *--* e-mails. She prefers to call people.
13. “Where’s Sue?” “She’s in *--* backyard.”
14. Excuse me, I’m looking for *--* Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15. Gary was sick *--* last week, so he didn’t go to *--* work.
16. Everest is *--* highest mountain in *--* world.
17. I usually listen to *--* radio while I’m having *--* breakfast.
18. I like *--* sports. My favorite sport is *--* basketball.
19. Julia is *--* doctor. Her husband is *--* art teacher.
20. My apartment is on *--* second floor. Turn left at *--* top of *--* stairs, and it’s on *--* right.
21. After *--* dinner, we watched *--* TV.
22. I’ve been to *--* northern Mexico but not to *--* south.

### Prepositions

Units 104–109, 112

35 Write a preposition (*in*/*for*/*by*, etc.).

1. Helen is studying math *in* college.
2. What is the longest river *--* Europe?
3. Is there anything *--* TV tonight?
4. We arrived *--* the hotel after midnight.
5. “Where’s Mike?” “He’s *--* vacation.”
6. Tom hasn’t gotten up yet. He’s still *--* bed.
7. Lisa is away. She’s been away *--* Monday.
8. The next meeting is *--* April 15.
9. We traveled across Canada *--* train.
10. There’s too much sugar *--* my coffee.
11. Kevin lived in Las Vegas *--* six months. He didn’t like it very much.
12. Were there a lot of people *--* the party?
13. I don’t know any of the people *--* this photo.
14. The train was very slow. It stopped *--* every station.
15. I like this room. I like the pictures *--* the walls.
16. “Did you paint that picture?” “No, it was given to me *--* a friend of mine.”
17. I’m going away *--* a few days. I’ll be back *--* Thursday.
18. Silvia has gone *--* Italy. She’s *--* Milan right now.
19. Emma quit school *--* sixteen and got a job *--* a bookstore.
This guide will help you decide which units you need to study.

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C, etc.). You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C, etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, study the unit(s) in the box on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

There is an Answer Key to this Study Guide on page 306.

### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Alternatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Can you close the window, please?</td>
<td>A I cold  B I'm cold  C I have cold  D It has cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Tom ____________ in politics.</td>
<td>A isn't interested  B not interested  C doesn't interested  D doesn't interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 “___________?” “No, she's out.”</td>
<td>A Is at home your mother  B Does your mother at home  C Is your mother at home  D Are your mother at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 These postcards are nice. ____________</td>
<td>A How much are they?  B How many are they?  C How much they are?  D How much is they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Look, there's Sarah. ____________ a brown coat.</td>
<td>A She wearing  B She has wearing  C She is wearing  D She's wearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 You can turn off the television. ____________ it.</td>
<td>A I'm not watch  B I'm not watching  C I not watching  D I don't watching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 “___________ today?” “Yes, he is.”</td>
<td>A Is working Paul  B Is work Paul  C Is Paul work  D Is Paul working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8 Look, there's Emily! ____________</td>
<td>A Where she is going?  B Where she go?  C Where's she going?  D Where she going?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9 The earth ____________ around the sun.</td>
<td>A going  B go  C goes  D does go  E is go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10 We ____________ late on weekends.</td>
<td>A often sleep  B sleep often  C often sleeping  D are often sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11 We ____________ television very often.</td>
<td>A not watch  B doesn't watch  C don't watch  D don't watching  E watch not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.12 "______________ on Sundays?" "No, not usually."
A Do you work  
B Are you work  
C Does you work  
D Do you working  
E Work you

1.13 I don't understand this sentence. What ________________ ?
A mean this word  
B means this word  
C does mean this word  
D does this word mean  
E this word means

1.14 Please be quiet. ________________
A I working.  
B I work.  
C I'm working.  
D I'm work.

1.15 Tom ________________ a shower every morning.
A takes  
B taking  
C is taking  
D take

1.16 What ________________ on weekends?
A do you usually  
B are you usually doing  
C are you usually do  
D do you usually do  
E you do usually

1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. ________________ a headache.
A She have  
B She have got  
C She has  
D She's got

1.18 Mr. and Mrs. Harris ________________ any children.
A don't have  
B doesn't have  
C no have  
D haven't got  
E hasn't got

Past

2.1 The weather ________________ last week.
A is nice  
B was nice  
C were nice  
D nice  
E had nice

2.2 Why ________________ late this morning?
A you was  
B did you  
C was you  
D you were  
E were you

2.3 Terry ________________ in a bank from 2001 to 2008.
A work  
B working  
C works  
D worked  
E was work

2.4 Caroline ________________ to the movies three times last week.
A go  
B went  
C goes  
D got  
E was

2.5 I ________________ television yesterday.
A didn't watch  
B didn't watched  
C wasn't watched  
D don't watch  
E didn't watching

2.6 "How ________________ ?" "I don't know. I didn't see it."
A happened the accident  
B did happen the accident  
C does the accident happen  
D did the accident happen  
E the accident happened

2.7 What ________________ at 11:30 yesterday?
A were you doing  
B was you doing  
C you were doing  
D were you do  
E you was doing
2.8 Jack was reading a book when the phone _____________.
A ringing  B ring  C rang  D was ringing  E was ring

2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They ____________ at the bus stop.
A waiting  B waited  C were waiting  D was waiting  E were waited

2.10 Dave ____________ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.
A working  B works  C work  D use to work  E used to work

Present perfect

3.1 “Where’s Rebecca?” “__________ to bed.”
A She is gone  B She has gone  C She goes  D She have gone  E She's gone

3.2 “Are Diane and Paul here?” “No, they ____________.”
A don’t arrive yet  B have already arrived  C haven’t already arrived  D haven’t arrived yet

3.3 My sister ____________ by plane.
A has never travel  B has never traveled  C is never traveled  D have never traveled  E has never traveled

3.4 ____________ that woman before, but I can’t remember where.
A I see  B I seen  C I've saw  D I’ve seen  E I’ve seeing

3.5 “How long ____________ married?” “Since 1998.”
A you are  B you have been  C has you been  D are you  E have you been

3.6 “Do you know Lisa?” “Yes, ____________ her for a long time.”
A I knew  B I've known  C I know  D I am knowing

3.7 Richard has been in Canada ____________.
A for six months  B since six months  C six months ago  D in six months

3.8 “When did Tom leave?” “__________.”
A For ten minutes  B Since ten minutes  C Ten minutes ago  D In ten minutes

3.9 We ____________ a vacation last year.
A don't take  B haven't taken  C hasn't taken  D didn’t take  E didn't took

3.10 Where ____________ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn’t find you.
A you were  B you have been  C was you  D have you been  E were you
Passive

4.1 This house __________ 100 years ago.
   A is built  B is building  C was building  D was built  E built

4.2 We __________ to the party last week.
   A didn’t invite  B didn’t invited  C weren’t invited  D wasn’t invited  E haven’t been invited

4.3 “Where __________ born?” “In Cairo.”
   A you are  B you were  C was you  D are you  E were you

4.4 My car is at the garage. It __________ .
   A is being repaired  B is repairing  C have been repaired  D repaired  E repairs

4.5 I can’t find my keys. I think __________ .
   A they’ve been stolen  B they are stolen  C they’ve stolen  D they’re being stolen

Verb forms

5.1 It __________ , so we didn’t need an umbrella.
   A wasn’t rained  B wasn’t rain  C didn’t raining  D wasn’t raining

5.2 Somebody __________ this window.
   A has broke  B has broken  C has breaked  D has break

Future

6.1 Andrew __________ tennis tomorrow.
   A is playing  B play  C plays  D is play

6.2 __________ out tonight?
   A Are you going  B Are you go  C Do you go  D Go you  E Do you going

6.3 “What time is the concert tonight?” “It __________ at 7:30.”
   A is start  B is starting  C starts  D start  E starting

6.4 What __________ to the wedding next week?
   A are you wearing  B are you going to wear  C do you wear  D you are going to wear

6.5 I think Kelly __________ her driver’s test.
   A passes  B will pass  C will be pass  D will passing

6.6 __________ to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us?
   A We go  B We’ll go  C We’re going  D We will going

6.7 __________ you tomorrow, OK?” “OK, bye.”
   A I call  B I calling  C I’m calling  D I’ll call

6.8 There’s a good program on TV tonight. __________ it.
   A I watch  B I’ll watch  C I’m going to watch  D I’ll watching

6.9 It’s a nice day. __________ for a walk?
   A Do we go  B Shall we go  C Should we go  D We go  E Go we
### Modals, imperative, etc.

7.1 _______ to the movies tonight, but I’m not sure.
   A I'll go  B I’m going  C I may go  D I might go

7.2 “______ here?” “Sure.”
   A Can I sit  B Do I sit  C May I sit  D Can I to sit

7.3 I’m having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel _______.
   A can’t come  B can’t to come  C can’t coming  D couldn’t come

7.4 Before Maria came to the United States, she _______ understand much English.
   A can  B can’t  C not  D couldn’t  E doesn’t

7.5 We _______ walk home last night. There were no buses.
   A have to  B had to  C must  D must to  E must have

7.6 You worked 10 hours today. You _______ tired.
   A must  B can  C must be  D can be  E must to be

7.7 It’s a good movie. You _______ go and see it.
   A should to  B ought to  C ought  D should  E have

7.8 What time _______ go to the dentist tomorrow?
   A you must  B you have to  C have you to  D do you have to

7.9 We _______ wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.
   A don’t have to  B hadn’t to  C didn’t have to  D didn’t had to  E mustn’t

7.10 “______ some coffee?” “No, thank you.”
   A Are you liking  B You like  C Would you like  D Do you like

7.11 I don’t really want to go out. _______ home.
   A I rather stay  B I’d rather stay  C I’d rather to stay  D I’d prefer to stay

7.12 Please _______. Stay here with me.
   A don’t go  B you no go  C go not  D you don’t go

7.13 It’s a nice day, _______ out.
   A Let’s to go  B Let’s go  C Let’s going  D We go

### There and it

8.1 Excuse me, _______ a hotel near here?
   A has there  B is there  C there is  D is it

8.2 _______ a lot of accidents on this road. It’s very dangerous.
   A Have  B It has  C There have  D They are  E There are

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but _______ anything to eat.
   A there wasn’t  B there weren’t  C it wasn’t  D there hasn’t been

8.4 _______ two miles from our house to downtown.
   A It's  B It has  C There is  D There are

8.5 _______ true that you’re moving to Dallas?
   A Is there  B Is it  C Is  D Are you
### Auxiliary verbs

9.1 I haven’t seen the movie, but my sister ______________.
   - A does
   - B is
   - C has seen
   - D has
   - E hasn’t

9.2 I don’t like hot weather, but Sue ______________.
   - A does
   - B doesn’t
   - C do
   - D does like
   - E likes

9.3 “Nicole got married last week.” “______________? Really?”
   - A Got she
   - B She got
   - C She did
   - D She has

9.4 You haven’t met my mother, ______________?
   - A haven’t you
   - B have you
   - C did you
   - D you have
   - E you haven’t

9.5 Bill doesn’t watch TV. He doesn’t read newspapers, ______________.
   - A too
   - B either
   - C neither
   - D never

9.6 “I’d like to go to Australia.” “______________.”
   - A So do I
   - B So am I
   - C So would I
   - D Neither do I
   - E So I would

9.7 Sue ______________ much on weekends.
   - A don’t
   - B doesn’t
   - C don’t do
   - D doesn’t do

### Questions

10.1 “When ______________?” “I’m not sure. More than 100 years ago.”
   - A did the telephone invent
   - B has the telephone invented
   - C was invented the telephone
   - D was the telephone invented
   - E the telephone was invented

10.2 “I broke my finger last week.” “How ______________ that?”
   - A did you
   - B you did
   - C you did do
   - D did you do

10.3 Why ______________ me last night? I was waiting for you to call.
   - A didn’t you call
   - B you not call
   - C you don’t call
   - D you didn’t call

10.4 “Who ______________ in this house?” “I don’t know.”
   - A lives
   - B does live
   - C does lives
   - D living

10.5 What ______________ when you told him the story?
   - A said Paul
   - B did Paul say
   - C Paul said
   - D did Paul said

10.6 “Tom’s father is in the hospital.” “______________”
   - A In which hospital he is?
   - B In which hospital he is in?
   - C Which hospital he is in?
   - D Which hospital is he in?

10.7 Did you have a good vacation? ______________
   - A How was the weather like?
   - B What was the weather like?
   - C What the weather was like?
   - D Was the weather like?

10.8 ______________ taller – Joe or Gary?
   - A Who is
   - B What is
   - C Which is
   - D Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. ______________ is yours?
   - A What
   - B Who
   - C Which
   - D How
   - E Which one
10.10 How long ________________ to cross the Atlantic by ship?
A is it  B does it need  C does it take  D does it want

10.11 I don't remember what ________________ at the party.
A Jenny was wearing  B was wearing Jenny  C was Jenny wearing

10.12 “Do you know ________________?” “Yes, I think so.”
A if Jack is at home  B is Jack at home  C whether Jack is at home
D that Jack is at home

Reported speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that ________________ me, but he didn’t.
A he call  B he calls  C he’ll call  D he’s going to call
E he would call

11.2 “Why did Tim go to bed so early?” “He ________________.”
A said he was tired  B said that he was tired  C said me he was tired
D told me he was tired  E told that he was tired

-ing and to . . .

12.1 You shouldn’t ________________ so hard.
A working  B work  C to work  D worked

12.2 It’s late. I ________________ now.
A must to go  B have go  C have to going  D have to go

12.3 Tina has decided ________________ her car.
A sell  B to sell  C selling  D to selling

12.4 I don’t mind ________________ early.
A get up  B to get up  C getting up  D to getting up

12.5 Do you like ________________ early?
A get up  B to get up  C getting up  D to getting up

12.6 Do you want ________________ some money?
A me lend  B me lending  C me to lend  D that I lend

12.7 He’s very funny. He makes ________________.
A me laugh  B me laughing  C me to laugh  D that I laugh

12.8 Paula went to the store ________________ some fruit.
A for get  B for to get  C for getting  D to get  E get

Go, get, do, make, and have

13.1 The water looks nice. I’m going ________________.
A for a swim  B on a swim  C to swimming  D swimming

13.2 I’m sorry your mother is sick. I hope she ________________ better soon.
A has  B makes  C gets  D goes

13.3 Kate ________________ the car and drove away.
A went into  B went in  C got in  D got into

13.4 “Shall I open the window?” “No, it’s OK. I’ll ________________ it.”
A do  B make  C get  D open
13.5 I'm sorry, I ____________ a mistake.
   A did  B made  C got  D had

13.6 ____________ enough time to do everything you wanted?
   A Have you  B Had you  C Do you have  D Did you have

Pronouns and possessives

14.1 I don't want this book. You can have ____________ .
   A it  B them  C her  D him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go with ____________ ?
   A her  B they  C them  D him

14.3 I know Donna, but I don't know ____________ husband.
   A their  B his  C she  D her

14.4 Hawaii is famous for ____________ beaches.
   A his  B its  C it's  D their

14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me ____________ .
   A her  B hers  C her umbrella  D she's

14.6 I went to the movies with a friend of ____________ .
   A mine  B my  C me  D I  E myself

14.7 We had a good vacation. We enjoyed ____________ .
   A us  B our  C ours  D ourself  E ourselves

14.8 Kate and Helen are good friends. They know ____________ well.
   A each other  B them  C themselves  D themselves

14.9 Have you met ____________ ?
   A the wife of Mr. Black  B Mr. Black wife  C the wife Mr. Black
   D Mr. Black's wife  E the Mr. Black's wife

14.10 Have you seen ____________ ?
   A the car of my parents  B my parent's car  C my parents' car
   D my parents car

A and the

15.1 I'm going to buy ____________ .
   A hat and umbrella  B a hat and a umbrella  
   C a hat and an umbrella  D an hat and an umbrella

15.2 “What do you do?” “______________ .”
   A I dentist  B I'm a dentist  C I'm dentist  D I do dentist

15.3 I'm going shopping. I need ____________ .
   A some new jeans  B a new jeans  C a new pair of jeans
   D a new pair jeans

15.4 I like the people here. ____________ very friendly.
   A She is  B They are  C They is  D It is  E He is

15.5 We can't get into the house without ____________ .
   A some key  B a key  C key
15.6 I'd like ________________ about hotels in Mexico City.
   A some information  B some informations  C an information

15.7 We enjoyed our vacation. ________________ was very nice.
   A Hotel  B A hotel  C An hotel  D The hotel

15.8 The table is in ________________ .
   A middle of room  B middle of the room  C the middle of the room  D the middle of room

15.9 What did you have for ________________ ?
   A the breakfast  B breakfast  C a breakfast

15.10 I finish ________________ at 5:00 every day.
   A the work  B work  C a work

15.11 I'm tired. I'm going ________________ .
   A in bed  B in the bed  C to a bed  D to the bed  E to bed

15.12 We don't eat ________________ very often.
   A the meat  B some meat  C a meat  D meat

15.13 ________________ is in New York.
   A The Times Square  B Times Square

15.14 My friends are staying at ________________ .
   A the Regent Hotel  B Regent Hotel

Determiners and pronouns

16.1 “I'm going on vacation next week.” “Oh, ________________ nice.”
   A it's  B this is  C that's

16.2 “Is there a bank near here?” “Yes, there's ________________ on the corner.”
   A some  B it  C one  D a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have ________________ ?
   A clean one  B a clean one  C clean  D a clean

16.4 I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy ________________ clothes.
   A any  B some

16.5 “Where's your luggage?” “I don't have ________________ .”
   A one  B some  C any

16.6 Tracey and Jeff ________________ .
   A have no children  B don't have no children  C don't have any children  D have any children

16.7 “How much money do you have?” “________________.”
   A No  B No one  C Any  D None

16.8 There is ________________ in the room. It's empty.
   A anybody  B nobody  C anyone  D no one

16.9 “What did you say?” “________________.”
   A Nothing  B Nobody  C Anything  D Anybody
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

16.10 I'm hungry. I want ________________
A something for eat  B something to eat  C something for eating

16.11 It rained ________________ last week.
A all day  B all days  C every days  D every day

16.12 ________________ friends.
A Everybody need  B Everybody needs  C Everyone need  D Everyone needs

16.13 ________________ children like to play.
A Most  B The most  C Most of  D The most of

16.14 I like ________________ those pictures.
A both  B both of  C either  D either of

16.15 I haven't read ________________ these books.
A neither  B neither of  C either  D either of

16.16 Do you have ________________ friends?
A a lot of  B much  C many  D much of  E many of

16.17 We like movies, so we go to the movies ________________.
A a lot of  B much  C many  D a lot

16.18 There were ________________ people in the theater. It was almost empty.
A a little  B few  C little  D a few of

16.19 They have ________________ money, so they're not poor.
A a little  B a few  C few  D little  E little of

Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any ________________.
A foreign languages  B languages foreign  C languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very ________________.
A quick  B quicker  C quickly

17.3 You speak English very ________________.
A good  B fluent  C well  D slow

17.4 Helen wants ________________.
A a more big car  B a car more big  C a car bigger  D a bigger car

17.5 “Do you feel better today?” “No, I feel ________________.”
A good  B worse  C more bad  D more worse

17.6 Athens is older ________________ Rome.
A as  B than  C that  D of

17.7 I can run faster ________________.
A than him  B that he can  C than he can  D as he can  E as he

17.8 Tennis isn't ________________ soccer.
A popular as  B popular than  C as popular than  D so popular that  E as popular as
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH ANSWER IS RIGHT, STUDY UNIT(S)

17.9 The weather today is the same ________ yesterday.
   A as   B that   C than   D like

17.10 The Best West Motel is ________ in town.
   A the more expensive motel   B the most expensive motel
   C the motel most expensive   D the motel the more expensive
   E the motel more expensive

17.11 The movie was very bad. I think it’s the ________ movie I’ve ever seen.
   A worse   B badest   C most bad   D worst   E more worse

17.12 Why don’t you buy a car? You’ve got ________.
   A enough money   B money enough   C enough of money

17.13 Is your English ________ a conversation?
   A enough good to have   B good enough for have   C enough good for
   D good enough to have

17.14 I’m ________ out.
   A too tired for go   B too much tired for going   C too tired to go
   D too much tired to go

Word order

18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She ________.
   A reads every day a newspaper   B reads a newspaper every day
   C every day reads a newspaper

18.2 ________ coffee in the morning.
   A I drink always   B Always I drink   C I always drink

18.3 ________ during the day.
   A They are at home never   B They are never at home
   C They never are at home   D Never they are at home

18.4 “Where’s Emma?” “She ________.”
   A isn’t here yet   B isn’t here already   C isn’t here still

18.5 I locked the door, and I gave ________.
   A Sarah the keys   B to Sarah the keys   C the keys Sarah
   D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when ________ more time.
   A I’ll have   B I had   C I have   D I’m going to have

19.2 ________ late tonight, don’t wait for me.
   A If I’m   B If I’ll be   C When I’m   D When I’ll be

19.3 I don’t know the answer. If I ________ the answer, I’d tell you.
   A know   B would know   C have known   D knew

19.4 I like that jacket. ________ it if it wasn’t so expensive.
   A I buy   B I’ll buy   C I bought   D I’d bought   E I’d buy
19.5 Emma lives in a house __________ is 100 years old.
A who  B that  C which  D it  E what

19.6 The people __________ work in the office are very friendly.
A who  B that  C they  D which  E what

19.7 Did you find the books __________?
A who you wanted  B that you wanted  C what you wanted  D you wanted  E you wanted it

19.8 I met __________ can speak six languages.
A a woman who  B a woman which  C a woman  D a woman she

Prepositions

20.1 Bye! See you __________.
A Friday  B at Friday  C in Friday  D on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves __________ five minutes.
A at  B on  C from  D after  E in

20.3 “How long will you be away?” “_____________ Monday.”
A On  B To  C Until  D Till  E Since

20.4 We played basketball yesterday. We played __________ two hours.
A in  B for  C since  D during

20.5 I always have breakfast before __________ to work.
A I go  B go  C to go  D going

20.6 Write your name __________ the top of the page.
A at  B on  C in  D to

20.7 There are a lot of apples __________ those trees.
A at  B on  C in  D to

20.8 What’s the largest city __________ the world?
A at  B on  C in  D of

20.9 The office is __________ the second floor.
A at  B on  C in  D to

20.10 I met a lot of people __________ the party.
A on  B to  C in  D at

20.11 I want to go __________ Mexico next year.
A at  B on  C in  D to

20.12 What time did you arrive __________ the hotel?
A at  B on  C in  D to

20.13 “Where is Don in this picture?” “Don is __________ Bob.”
A at front of  B in the front of  C in front of  D in front from

20.14 I jumped __________ the wall into the garden.
A on  B through  C across  D over  E above

20.15 Jane isn’t at work this week. She’s __________ vacation.
A on  B in  C for  D to  E at
20.16 Do you like traveling ________________?
A with train  B with the train  C in train  D on train  E by train

20.17 I’m not very good ________________ telling stories.
A on  B with  C at  D in  E for

20.18 Tom left without ________________ good-bye.
A say  B saying  C to say  D that he said

20.19 I have to call ________________ tonight.
A with my parents  B to my parents  C at my parents  D my parents

20.20 “Do you like eating in restaurants?” “Sometimes. It depends ________________ the restaurant.”
A in  B at  C of  D on  E over

Phrasal verbs

21.1 A car stopped and a woman got ________________.
A off  B down  C out  D out of

21.2 It was cold, so I ________________.
A put on my coat  B put my coat on  C put the coat on me  D put me the coat on

21.3 I have Rachel’s keys. I have to ________________ to her.
A give back  B give them back  C give back them  D give it back
# Answer Key to Exercises

## UNIT 1

### 1.1
1. they're
2. it isn't / it's not
3. that's
4. I'm not
5. you aren't / you're not

### 1.2
2. 'm/am 6. are
3. is 7. is... are
4. are 8. 'm/am... is
5. 's/is

### 1.3
2. I'm / I am
3. He's / He is
4. they're / they are
5. It's / It is
6. You're / You are
7. She's / She is
8. Here's / Here is

### 1.4
**Example answers:**
1. My name is Robert.
2. I'm from Brazil.
3. I'm 25.
4. I'm a cook.
5. My favorite colors are black and white.
6. I'm interested in plants.

### 1.5
2. They're / They are cold.
3. He's / He is hot.
4. He's / He is afraid.
5. They're / They are hungry.
6. She's / She is angry.

### 1.6
2. It's / It is windy today.
or It isn't / It's not windy today.
3. My hands are cold.
or My hands aren't / are not cold.
4. Brazil is a very big country.
5. Diamonds aren't / are not cheap.
6. Toronto isn't / is not in the United States.
7. I'm / I am hungry.
or I'm not / I am not hungry.

### 1.7
9. I'm / I am a good swimmer.
or I'm not / I am not a good swimmer.
10. I'm / I am interested in politics.
or I'm not / I am not interested in politics.

## UNIT 2

### 2.1
2. f 6. e
3. h 7. b
4. c 8. i
5. a 9. d

### 2.2
3. Is your job interesting?
4. Are the stores open today?
5. Where are you from?
6. Are you interested in sports?
7. Is the post office near here?
8. Are your children at school?
9. Why are you late?

### 2.3
2. Where's / Where is
3. How old are
4. How much are
5. What's / What is
6. Who's / Who is
7. What color are

### 2.4
2. Are you Australian?
3. How old are you?
4. Are you a teacher?
5. Are you married?
6. Is your wife a lawyer?
7. Where's / Where is she from?
8. What's / What is her name?
9. How old is she?

### 2.5
2. Yes, I am.
or No, I'm not.
3. Yes, it is.
or No, it isn't./
No, it's not.
4. Yes, they are.
or No, they aren't.
No, they're not.
5. Yes, it is.
or No, it isn't./
No, it's not.
6. Yes, I am.
or No, I'm not.

### UNIT 3

### 3.1
2. 's/is waiting
3. 're/are playing

### 3.2
2. 's/is cooking
3. 're/are standing
4. 's/is swimming
5. 're/are staying
6. 's/is taking
7. 're/are building
8. 'm/am leaving

### 3.3
3. She's / She is sitting on the floor.
4. She isn't / She's not reading a book.
5. She isn't / She's not playing the piano.
6. She's / She is laughing.
7. She's / She is wearing a hat.
8. She isn't / She's not writing a letter.

### 3.4
3. I'm sitting on a chair.
or I'm not sitting on a chair.
4. I'm eating.
or I'm not eating.
5. It's raining.
or It isn't raining./ It's not raining.
6. I'm studying English.
7. I'm listening to music.
or I'm not listening to music.
8. The sun is shining.
or The sun isn't shining.
9. I'm wearing shoes.
or I'm not wearing shoes.
10. I'm not reading a newspaper.

### UNIT 4

### 4.1
2. Are you leaving now?
3. Is it raining?
4. Are you enjoying the movie?
5. Is that clock working?
6. Are you waiting for a bus?

### 4.2
2. Where is she going?
3. What are you eating?
4. Why are you crying?
5. What are they looking at?
6. Why is he laughing?
UNIT 6

6.1
1. Jane doesn't play the piano very well.
2. They don't know my phone number.
3. We don't work very hard.
4. Mike doesn't have a car.
5. You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2
1. Carol doesn't like classical music.
   I like (or I don't like) classical music.
2. Bill and Rose don't like boxing.
   I like (or I don't like) boxing.
3. Bill and Rose like horror movies.
   I don't like horror movies.
   I like (or I don't like) horror movies.

6.3
Example answers:
1. I never go to the theater.
2. I don't ride a bicycle very often.
3. I never eat in restaurants.
4. I travel by train a lot.

6.4
1. doesn't use
2. doesn't go
3. doesn't wear
4. don't know
5. doesn't cost
6. don't see

6.5
1. don't know
2. doesn't talk
3. drinks
4. don't believe
5. like
6. doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1
1. Do you play tennis?
2. Does Lucy live near here?
3. Do Tom's friends play tennis?
   Do they play tennis?
4. Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
5. Does your mother speak English? / Does she speak English?
6. Do you do yoga every morning?
7. Does Paul often travel on business? / Does he often travel on business?
8. Do you want to be famous?
9. Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2
1. How often do you watch TV?
2. What do you want for dinner?
3. Do you like football?
4. Does your brother like football?
5. What do you do in your free time?
6. Where does your sister work?
7. Do you ever go to the movies?
8. What does this word mean?
9. Does it often snow here?
10. What time do you usually go to bed?
11. How much does it cost to call Mexico?
12. What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3
1. Do you enjoy / Do you like
2. do you start
3. do you finish
4. do you get
5. does he do
6. does he teach

7.4
1. Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
2. Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
3. Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
4. Yes, it does. or No, it doesn't.
5. Yes, I do. or No, I don't.

UNIT 8

8.1
1. No, she isn't.
   Yes, she does.
   She's playing the piano.
2. Yes, he does.
   Yes, he is.
   He's washing a window.
3. No, they aren't.
   Yes, they do.
   They teach.
UNIT 9

9.1 2. he's got 3. they've got 4. she hasn't got 5. it's got 6. I haven't got

9.2 2. He's got a computer. or He has a computer. 3. He hasn't got a dog. or He doesn't have a dog. 4. He hasn't got a cell phone. or He doesn't have a cell phone. 5. He's got a watch. or He has a watch. 6. He's got two brothers and a sister. or He has two brothers and a sister. 7. I've got a computer. / I have a computer. or I haven't got a computer. / I don't have a computer. 8. I've got a dog. / I have a dog. or I haven't got a dog. / I don't have a dog. 9. I've got a bike. / I have a bike. or I haven't got a bike. / I don't have a bike. 10. (Example answer) I've got a brother and a sister.

9.3 3. He has a new job. 4. They don't have much money. 5. Do you have an umbrella?

UNIT 10

10.1 2. Jack and Kate were at the movies. 3. Sue was at the station. 4. Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in/at a restaurant. 5. Ben was at the beach. 6. (Example answer) I was at work.

10.2 2. is . . . was 3. 'm/am 4. was 5. were 6. 're/are 7. Was 8. was 9. are . . . were

10.3 2. wasn't . . . was 3. was . . . were 4. “Were Kate and Bill at the party?” “Kate was there, but Bill wasn't.” or “Kate wasn't there, but Bill was.” 5. were 6. weren't . . . were

10.4 2. Was your exam difficult? 3. Where were Sue and Chris last week? 4. How much was your new camera? 5. Why were you angry yesterday? 6. Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1 2. opened 3. started . . . ended 4. wanted 5. happened 6. rained 7. enjoyed . . . stayed 8. died

11.2 2. saw 3. played 4. paid 5. visited 6. bought 7. went

11.3 2. got 3. had 4. left 5. drove 6. got 7. parked 8. walked

11.4 2. lost her keys 3. met her friends 4. bought two newspapers. 5. went to the movies. 6. ate an orange. 7. took a shower. 8. came (to see us)

11.5 Example answers: 2. I got up late yesterday. 3. I met some friends at lunchtime. 4. I went to the supermarket. 5. I called a lot of people. 6. I lost my keys.

UNIT 12

12.1 2. didn't work 4. didn't 3. didn't go 5. didn't do

12.2 2. Did you enjoy the party? 3. Did you have a nice vacation? 4. Did you finish work early? 5. Did you sleep well last night?
12.3
I got up before 7:00. or
I didn't get up before 7:00.
I took a shower. or
I didn't take a shower.
I bought a magazine. or
I didn't buy a magazine.
I ate meat. or
I didn't eat meat.
I went to bed before 10:30. or
I didn't go to bed before 10:30.

12.4
did you get to work
Did you win
did you go
did it cost
Did you go to bed late
Did you have a nice time
did it happen / did that happen

12.5
bought
didn't have
Did it rain
didn't stay
didn't know
opened

UNIT 13

13.1
Jack and Kate were at the supermarket. They were buying food.
Tim was in his car. He was driving.
Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in the park. They were walking.
(Example answer) I was at a cafe. I was having coffee with some friends.

13.2
She was playing tennis
She was reading a/the newspaper
She was cooking (lunch)
She was having/eating breakfast
She was cleaning the kitchen

13.3
What were you doing
Was it raining
Why was Sue driving
Was Tim wearing

13.4
He was carrying a bag.
He wasn't going to the dentist.

UNIT 14

14.1
1. happened . . . was painting . . . fell
2. arrived . . . got . . . were waiting
3. was walking . . . met . . . was going . . . was carrying . . . stopped

14.2
2. was studying
3. did the mail arrive . . . came . . . was having
4. didn't go
5. were you driving . . . stopped . . . wasn't driving
6. Did your team win . . . didn't play
7. did you break . . . were playing . . . hit . . . broke
8. Did you see . . . was wearing
9. were you doing
10. lost . . . did you get . . . climbed

UNIT 15

15.1
2. He used to play baseball.
3. She used to be a taxi driver.
4. They used to live in the country.
5. He used to wear glasses.
6. This building used to be a hotel.

15.2
2. She used to play volleyball.
3-6.
She used to go out three or four nights a week. / She used to go out a lot.
She used to play a musical instrument. / She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like to read.
She used to take two or three trips a year. / She used to travel a lot.

UNIT 16

16.1
3. Have you ever been to South Korea?
4. Have you ever lost your passport?
5. Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6. Have you ever won a race?
7. Have you ever been to Peru?
8. Have you ever driven a bus?
9. Have you ever broken your leg?

16.2
Helen:
2. She's/She has been to South Korea once.
3. She's/She has never won a race.
4. She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.

You (example answers):
5. I've/I have never been to New York.
6. I've/I have played tennis many times.
7. I've/I have never driven a truck.
8. I've/I have been late for work a few times.

16.3
2-6.
She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.
She's/She has traveled all over the world. or She's/She has been all over the world.
She's/She has been married three times.
She's/She has written 10 books.
She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.
UNIT 17

17.1
3. have been
4. has been
5. have lived / have been living
6. has worked / has been working
7. has had
8. have been studying

17.2
2. How long have they been there? or ... been in Brazil?
3. How long have you known her? or ... known Amy?
4. How long has she been studying Italian?
5. How long has he lived in Seattle? / How long has he been living ... ?
6. How long have you been a teacher?
7. How long has it been raining?

17.3
2. She has lived in South Korea all her life.
3. They have been on vacation since Sunday.
4. The sun has been shining all day.
5. She has been waiting for 10 minutes.
6. He has had a beard since he was 20.

17.4
2. I know
3. I've known
4. have you been waiting
5. works
6. She has been reading
7. have you lived
8. I've had
9. is ... He has been

UNIT 18

18.1
3. for 6. for
4. since 7. for
5. since 8. for ... since

18.2
Example answers:
2. A year ago.
3. A few weeks ago.
4. Two hours ago.
5. Six months ago.

18.3
3. for 20 years.
4. 20 years ago.
5. an hour ago.
6. a few days ago.
7. for six months.
8. for a long time

18.4
2. Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3. It's been raining for an hour.
4. I've known Sue since 2002.
5. Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
6. Liz has been studying medicine (at the university) for three years.
7. David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

18.5
Example answers:
1. I've lived in ... all my life.
2. I've been to New York three times.
3. I've been studying English for six months.
4. I've known Chris for a long time.
5. I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 19

19.1
2. He has/He's closed the door.
3. They have/They've gone to bed.
4. It has/It's stopped raining.
5. He has/He's taken a shower.
6. The picture has fallen down.

19.2
2. I've written them a letter.
3. She's broken her arm.
4. They've moved to Seattle.
5. I've made a big mistake.
6. I've lost my wallet. ... Have you seen it anywhere?
7. Have you heard? Mark has gotten married.
9. Brian took my bike again without asking.
10. Did you tell your friends the good news?
11. We didn't pay the electric bill.

UNIT 20

20.1
2. He's/He has just gotten up.
3. They've / They have just bought a car.
4. The race has just started.

20.2
2. No, they've / they have already seen it.
3. I've / I have already called him.
4. He's / He has already left / gone to work.
5. I've / I have already read it.
6. She's / She has already started (it).

20.3
2. Have you told your father about the accident yet?
3. I've / I have just eaten a big dinner, so I'm not hungry.
4. Jenny can watch TV because she's / she has already done her homework.
5. You can't go to bed - you haven't brushed your teeth ...
6. You can't talk to Pete because he's / he has just gone home.
7. Nicole has just gotten out of the hospital, so she can't go to work.
9. The mail carrier didn't come yet.
10. I just spoke to your sister.
11. Did Mario buy a new computer yet?
12. Ted and Alice didn't tell anyone they're getting married yet.
13. We already did our packing for our trip.
UNIT 21
21.1
1. I started (it)
2. did you finish
3. (Steve’s grandmother) died
4. Where were you / Where did you go

21.2
1. played
2. did you go
3. Have you ever met
4. wasn’t
5. ’s/has visited
6. turned
7. lived
8. haven’t been

21.3
1. Did you have
2. has won
3. Have you ever met
4. didn’t enjoy
5. ’ve/have seen . . . worked . . . Have you ever spoken met

UNIT 22
22.1
1. Glass is made from sand.
2. Stamps are sold in a post office.
3. This word isn’t used very often.
4. Are we allowed to park here?
5. How is this word pronounced?
6. The house has been torn down.
7. The trees have been cut down.
8. They have been invited to a party.

UNIT 23
23.1
1. A bridge is being built.
2. The windows are being cleaned/washed.
3. The grass is being cut.

UNIT 24
24.1
3. are 7. do
4. Does 8. Is
5. Do 9. does
6. Is 10. Are

24.2
2. don’t
3. ’m/am not
4. isn’t
5. don’t
6. doesn’t
7. ’m/am not
8. aren’t / ’re not

24.3
2. Did 7. were
3. were 8. Has
4. was 9. did
5. Has 10. have
6. did

24.4
2. was 6. ’ve/have
3. Have 7. is
4. are 8. was
5. were 9. has

24.5
3. eaten 8. understand
4. enjoying 9. listening
5. damaged 10. pronounced
6. use 11. open
7. gone

UNIT 25
25.1
3. said 10. happened
4. brought 11. heard
5. paid 12. put
6. enjoyed 13. caught
7. bought 14. watched
8. sat 15. understood
9. left
UNIT 25

25.2
2. began
3. ate
4. drank
5. drove
6. spoke
7. wrote
8. came
9. knew
10. took
11. went
12. gave
13. threw
14. got

25.3
3. slept
4. saw
5. rained
6. lost
7. stolen
8. went
9. finished

UNIT 29

29.1
2. I'll send
3. I'll eat
4. I'll sit
5. I'll do

29.2
2. I think I'll have
3. I don't think I'll play
4. I think I'll buy
5. I don't think I'll buy

UNIT 26

26.1
2. Richard is going to the movies.
3. Rachel is meeting Dave.
4. Karen is having lunch with Ken.
5. Tom and Sue are going to a party.

26.2
2. Are you working next week?
3. What are you doing tomorrow night?
4. What time are your friends coming?
5. When is Liz going on vacation?

26.3
Example answers:
3. I'm going away this weekend.
4. I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
5. I'm meeting a friend tonight.
6. I'm going to the movies on Thursday night.

UNIT 27

27.1
2. I'm going to take a bath.
3. I'm going to buy a car.
4. We're going to play soccer.

27.2
3. 'm/am going to walk
4. 's/is going to stay
5. 'm/am going to eat
6. 're/are going to give
7. 's/is going to lie down
8. Are... going to watch
9. is... going to do

27.3
2. The shelf is going to fall (down).
3. The car is going to turn (left).
4. He's / He is going to kick the ball.

27.4
Example answers:
1. I'm going to call Maria tonight.
2. I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
3. I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 28

28.1
2. she'll be
3. she was
4. she'll be

28.2
Example answers:
2. I'll be at home.
3. I'll probably be in bed.
4. I'll be at work.

28.3
2. 'll/will
3. won't
4. won't
30.2
1. I might take a trip.
2. I might see her on Monday.
3. I might have fish.
4. I might take a taxi.
5. I might buy/get a new car.
30.3
1. He might get up early.
2. He isn't/He's not working tomorrow.
3. He might be at home tomorrow morning.
4. He might watch television.
5. He's going out in the afternoon.
6. He might go shopping.

Example answers:
1. I might read a newspaper.
2. I might go out with some friends at night.
3. I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 31
31.1
1. Can you ski?
2. Can you play chess?
3. Can you run 10 kilometers?
4. Can you drive (a car)?
5. Can you ride (a horse)?
Example answers:
1. I can/can't swim.
2. I can/can't ski.
3. I can/can't play chess.
4. I can/can't run 10 kilometers.
5. I can/can't drive (a car).
6. I can/can't ride (a horse).

31.2
2. can see 4. can't find
3. can't hear 5. can speak

31.3
2. couldn't eat
3. can't decide
4. couldn't find
5. can't go
6. couldn't go

31.4
2. Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
3. Can/Could you turn down the radio (please)?

UNIT 32
32.1
2. must be hungry
3. must be good
4. must be very happy
5. must be for you
6. must be in the kitchen

32.2
2. must like
3. must have
4. must drink
5. must work

32.3
2. must not
3. must
4. must not
5. must not
6. must not
7. must

32.4
2. must know
3. must wear
4. must get
5. must take
6. must be

32.5
2. must
3. had to
4. mustn't
5. must
6. mustn't
7. had to

UNIT 33
33.1
2. You should go
3. You should eat
4. You should visit
5. You should wear
6. You should read

33.2
2. He shouldn't eat so much.
3. She shouldn't work so hard.
4. He shouldn't drive so fast.

UNIT 34
34.1
2. have to take
3. has to read
4. have to speak
5. has to travel
6. have to hit

34.2
2. have to go
3. had to buy
4. have to change
5. had to answer
6. have to wake
7. have to take

34.3
2. did he have to wait
3. does she have to go
4. did you have to pay
5. do you have to do
6. did they have to leave early
7. does he have to go to Moscow

34.4
2. doesn't have to wait.
3. didn't have to get up early.
4. doesn't have to work (so) hard.
3. I have to go to work every day.
4. I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
5. I have to go shopping tomorrow.
6. I had to take the bus to work last week.
7. I had to go to bed at 9:00 when I was younger.

UNIT 35

35.1
2. Would you like an apple?
3. Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
4. Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
5. Would you like a sandwich?
6. Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

35.2
2. Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3. Would you like to come to a concert next week?
4. Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

35.3
2. Do you like
3. Would you like
4. would you like
5. Would you like
6. I like
7. would you like
8. Would you like
9. Do you like
10. I'd like
11. I'd like
12. do you like

UNIT 36

36.1
2. ’d rather read (would rather read)
3. ’d rather have (I would rather have)
4. ’d rather wait (I would rather wait)

36.2
2. would you rather have/eat dinner
3. would you rather have
4. would you rather watch
5. would you rather call him

36.3
2. take
3. to go
4. get/have/find
5. carry/do
6. see / call / talk to / speak to ... to send / to write

36.4
2. I’d/I would rather be a journalist / a school teacher.
4. I’d/I would rather have a small house / a big house.
5. I’d/I would rather study electronics/philosophy.
6. I’d/I would rather watch a soccer game / a movie.

UNIT 37

37.1
3. Don’t buy
4. Smile
5. Don’t sit
6. Have
7. Don’t forget
8. Sleep
9. Be . . . Don’t drop

37.2
2. let’s take the bus
3. let’s watch TV
4. let’s go to a restaurant
5. let’s wait a little

37.3
3. No, let’s not go out.
4. No, don’t close the window.
5. No, don’t call me (tonight).
6. No, let’s not wait for Andy.
7. No, don’t turn on the light.
8. No, let’s not take a taxi.

UNIT 38

38.1
3. There’s / There is a hospital.
4. There isn’t a swimming pool.
5. There are two movie theaters.
6. There isn’t a university.
7. There aren’t any big hotels.

38.2
Example answers:
3. There is a university in . . .
4. There are a lot of big shops.
5. There isn’t an airport.
6. There aren’t many factories.

38.3
2. There’s / There is
3. is there
4. There are
5. are there
6. There isn’t
7. Is there
8. Are there
9. There’s / There is . . . There aren’t

38.4
2.–6.
There are eight planets in the solar system.
There are five players on a basketball team.
There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
There are thirty days in September.
There are fifty states in the United States.

UNIT 39

39.1
2. There was a carpet
3. There were three pictures
4. There was a small table
5. There were some flowers
6. There were some books
7. There was an armchair
8. There was a sofa

39.2
3. There was
4. Was there
5. there weren’t
6. There wasn’t
7. Were there
8. There wasn’t
9. There was
10. there weren’t
40.1  
1. It's cold.  
2. It's windy.  
3. It's sunny/clear.  
4. It's a nice day.  
5. It's snowing.  
6. It's cloudy.

40.2  
1. It's / It is  
2. Is it  
3. is it.../it is  
4. It's / It is  
5. Is it  
6. it

40.3  
1. How far is it from the hotel to the beach?  
2. How far is it from New York to Washington?  
3. How far is it from your house to the airport?

40.4  
1. It  
2. It.../it  
3. There  
4. Is there  
5. It's  
6. it

40.5  
1. It's nice to see you again  
2. It's impossible to work in this office  
3. It's easy to make friends  
4. It's interesting to visit different places  
5. It's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 40

UNIT 41

UNIT 42

UNIT 43

UNIT 44

ANSWER KEY TO EXERCISES
44.3
2. They haven't arrived.
3. I didn't go to the bank.
4. He doesn't speak Japanese.
5. We weren't angry.
6. He won't be happy.
7. Don't call me tonight.
8. It didn't rain yesterday.
9. I couldn't hear them.
10. I don't believe you.

44.4
2. I'm not / am not
3. can't
4. doesn't
5. isn't / 's not
6. don't ... haven't
7. Don't
8. didn't
9. haven't
10. won't
11. didn't
12. weren't
13. hasn't
14. shouldn't

44.5
3. He wasn't born in Los Angeles.
4. He doesn't like Los Angeles.
5. He'd like to live someplace else.
6. He can drive.
7. He hasn't traveled abroad.
8. He doesn't read the newspaper.
9. He isn't interested in politics.
10. He usually watches TV at night.
11. He didn't watch TV last night.
12. He went out last night.

45.3
3. What are the children doing?
4. How is cheese made?
5. Is your sister coming to the party?
6. Why don't you tell the truth?
7. Have your guests arrived yet?
8. What time does your plane leave?
9. Why didn't Jenny go to work?
10. Was your car damaged in the accident?

45.4
3. What are you reading?
4. What time did she go to bed?
5. When are they going (on vacation)?
6. Where did you see him?
7. Why can't you come (to the party)?
8. Where has she moved?
9. How much (money) do you need?
10. Why doesn't she like you?
11. How often does it rain?
12. When did you do it? / ... the shopping?

45.5
3. He wasn't born in Los Angeles.
4. He doesn't like Los Angeles.
5. He'd like to live someplace else.
6. He can drive.
7. He hasn't traveled abroad.
8. He doesn't read the newspaper.
9. He isn't interested in politics.
10. He usually watches TV at night.
11. He didn't watch TV last night.
12. He went out last night.

46.1
2. What fell off the shelf?
3. Who wants to see me?
4. Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
5. What made you sick?
6. Who is / Who's coming?

46.2
3. Who did you call?
4. What happened last night?
5. Who knows the answer?
6. Who did the dishes?
7. What did Jane do? / What did she do?
8. What woke you up?
9. Who saw the accident?
10. Who did you see?
11. Who has your pen? / Who has it?
12. What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

46.3
3. Who called you? What did she want?
3. Who did you ask? What did he say?
48.3
3. Which  7. Which
4. What   8. Who
5. What   9. What
6. Which  10. Which

48.4
2. How far
3. How old
4. How often
5. How deep
6. How long

48.5
2. How heavy is this box?
3. How old are you?
4. How much did you spend?
5. How often do you watch TV?
6. How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?

UNIT 49*
49.1
2. How long does it take to get from Houston to Mexico City by car?
3. How long does it take to get from Tokyo to Kyoto by train?
4. How long does it take to get from Kennedy Airport to Manhattan by bus?

49.2
Example answers:
2. It takes . . . hours to fly from . . . to Australia.
3. It takes . . . years to become a doctor in . . .
4. It takes . . . to walk from my home to the nearest supermarket.
5. It takes . . . to get from my house to the nearest airport.

49.3
2. How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3. How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
4. How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5. How long did it take them to repair the computer?

49.4
2. It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / . . . to get home.
3. It took me six months to learn to drive.

4. It took Mark/him three hours to drive to Houston. / . . . to get to Houston.
5. It took Lisa/ her a long time to find a job. / . . . to get a job.
6. It took me . . . to . . .

UNIT 50
50.1
2. I don't know where she is.
3. I don't know how old it is.
4. I don't know when he'll be here.
5. I don't know why he was angry.
6. I don't know how long she has lived here.

50.2
2. where Susan works
3. what Peter said
4. why he went home early
5. what time the meeting begins
6. how the accident happened

50.3
2. are you
3. they are
4. the museum is
5. do you want
6. elephants eat
7. it is

50.4
2. Do you know if/whether they are married?
3. Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
4. Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
5. Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

50.5
2. Do you know where Paula is?
3. Do you know if/whether she is working today? /. . . she's working today?
4. Do you know what time she starts work?
5. Do you know if/whether the banks are open tomorrow?
6. Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
7. Do you know if/whether they went to Jane's party?

50.6
Example answers:
2. Do you know what time the bus leaves?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
4. I don't know what I'm going to do tonight.
5. Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?
6. Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?

UNIT 51
51.1
2. She said (that) she was very busy.
3. She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
4. He said (that) he had to go out.
5. He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6. She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
7. They said (that) they would be home late. / . . . they'd be . . .
8. She said (that) she had just gotten back from vacation. / . . . she'd just gotten back . . .
9. She said (that) she was going to buy a new computer.
10. They said (that) they didn't have a key.

51.2
2. She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
3. He said (that) he needed it.
4. She said (that) she didn't want to go.
5. She said (that) I could have it.
6. He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / . . . he'd send . . .
7. Linda said (that) he had gone home. / . . . he'd gone home.
8. He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9. She said (that) she was going to the movies.

51.3
3. said  7. said
4. told  8. told
5. tell  9. tell
6. say  10. say

ANSWER KEY TO EXERCISES  287
UNIT 52
52.1
3. call
4. call Paul
5. to call Paul
6. to call Paul
7. call Paul
8. to call Paul
9. call Paul
10. call Paul

52.2
3. get
4. going
5. watch
6. flying
7. listening
8. eat
9. waiting
10. wear
11. doing . . . staying

52.3
4. to go
5. rain
6. to leave
7. help
8. studying
9. to go
10. wearing
11. to stay
12. taking
13. to have
14. hear
15. go
16. listening
17. to make
18. to be . . . take
19. use

UNIT 53
53.1
3. to see
4. to swim
5. cleaning
6. to ask
7. visiting
8. going
9. to be
10. waiting
11. to do
12. to speak
13. to go
14. crying / to cry
15. to work . . . talking

53.2
2. to help
3. to see
4. reading
5. to lose
6. to send
7. raining
8. to go
9. watching / to watch
10. to wait

53.3
2. going / to go to museums
3. to go
4. writing / to write e-mails
5. to go (there)
6. traveling by train
7. walking

Example answers:
1. I enjoy cooking.
2. I don't like driving / to drive.
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake.
4. When I'm on vacation, I like to do very little.
5. I don't mind traveling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.
6. I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 54
54.1
2. I want you to listen carefully.
3. I don't want you to be angry.
4. Do you want me to wait for you?
5. I don't want you to call me tonight.
6. I want you to meet Sarah.

54.2
2. A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3. I advised him to go to the doctor.
4. She asked me to help her.
5. I told him to come back in 10 minutes.
6. Paul let me use his phone.
7. I told her not to call before 8:00.
8. Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

54.3
2. to repeat
3. wait
4. to arrive
5. to get
6. go
7. borrow
8. to tell
9. to make (or to get)
10. think

UNIT 55
55.1
2.–4.
I went to a coffee shop to meet a friend.
I went to the drugstore to get some medicine.
I went to the supermarket to buy some food.

55.2
2. to read the newspaper
3. to open this door
4. to get some fresh air
5. to wake him up
6. to see who it was

55.3
Example answers:
2. to talk to you now
3. to tell her about the party
4. to do some shopping
5. to buy a car

55.4
2. to
3. to
4. for
5. to
6. for
7. to
8. to
9. for
10. for
11. to . . . for

55.5
2. for the movie to begin
3. for it to arrive
4. for you to tell me

UNIT 56
56.1
3. to
4. to
5. – (no preposition)
6. for
7. to
8. on . . . to
9. for
10. on
11. to
12. – (no preposition)
13. on
14. for
15. on

56.2
2. went fishing
3. goes swimming
4. going skiing
5. go shopping
6. went jogging/running
UNITE 57

57.1
2. get your jacket
3. get a doctor
4. get another one
5. gets the job
6. get some milk
7. get a ticket
8. gets a good salary
9. get a lot of rain
10. get a new computer

57.2
2. getting dark
3. getting married
4. getting ready
5. getting late

57.3
2. get wet
3. got married
4. gets angry
5. got lost
6. get old
7. got better

57.4
2. got to New York at 12:00.
3. I left the party at 11:15 and got home at midnight.
4. (Example answer) I left home at 8:30 and got to the airport at 10:00.

57.5
2. got off
3. got out of
4. got on

UNIT 58

58.1
2. do
3. make
4. made
5. did
6. do
7. done
8. make
9. making
10. do
11. doing

58.2
2. They're/They are doing (their) homework.
3. He's/He is doing the shopping or He is shopping.
4. They're/They are doing (their) laundry.
5. She's/She is making a phone call.
6. He's/He is making the/his bed.
7. She's/She is doing/washing the dishes.
8. He's/He is making a (shopping) list.
9. They're/They are making a movie.
10. He's/He is taking a picture/photograph.

58.3
2. make
3. do
4. done
5. made
6. did
7. do
8. make
9. do
10. making
11. made
12. make...do

UNIT 59

59.1
3. He doesn't have / He hasn't got
4. Gary had
5. Do you have / Have you got
6. we didn't have
7. She doesn't have / She hasn't got
8. Did you have

59.2
2. She's/She is having a cup of tea.
3. He's/He is having breakfast.
4. They're/They are having fun.
5. They're/They are having dinner.
6. They're having an argument.

59.3
3. Have a good/great trip!
4. Did you have a nice/good weekend?
5. Did you have a nice/good vacation?
6. Have a great/good time! or Have fun!
7. Are you going to have a (birthday) party?

59.4
2. have something to eat
3. had a glass of water
4. had a bad dream
5. had an accident
6. have a baby

UNIT 60

60.1
2. him
3. them
4. her
5. him

60.2
2. I...them
3. he...her
4. they...us
5. we...him

60.3
2. him
3. like it
4. you like it
5. don't like her
6. Do you like them?

60.4
2. him
3. them
4. them
5. me
6. they
7. us
8. her
9. me
10. her
11. them
12. he...it

60.5
2. Can you give it to him?
3. Can you give them to her?
4. Can you give it to me?
5. Can you give it to them?
6. Can you give them to us?

UNIT 61

61.1
2. her
3. our hands
4. his hands
5. their hands
6. your hands

61.2
2. They live with their parents.
3. We live with our parents.
4. Jane lives with her parents.
5. I live with my parents.
6. John lives with his parents.
7. Do you live with your parents?
8. Most children live with their parents.

ANSWER KEY TO EXERCISES 289
UNIT 61
2. their 6. their
3. his 7. her
4. his 8. their
5. her

UNIT 62
62.1 2. mine 6. yours
3. ours 7. mine
4. hers 8. his
5. theirs

UNIT 63
63.1 2. Yes, I know her, but I can't remember her name.
3. Yes, I know them, but I can't remember their names.
4. Yes, I know you, but I can't remember your name.

63.2 2. He invited us to stay with him at his house.
3. They invited me to stay with them at their house.
4. I invited them to stay with me at my house.
5. She invited us to stay with her at her house.
6. Did you invite him to stay with you at your house?

UNIT 64
64.1 2. myself 6. himself
3. herself 7. yourself
4. themselves 8. yourselves
5. myself

UNIT 65
65.1 3. Blanca is Pedro's wife.
4. Alberto is Julia's brother.
5. Alberto is Daniel's uncle.
6. Julia is Paul's wife.
7. Blanca is Daniel's grandmother.
8. Julia is Alberto's sister.
9. Paul is Julia's husband.
10. Paul is Daniel's father.
11. Daniel is Alberto's nephew.

UNIT 66
66.1 2. a 5. a 8. an
3. a 6. an 9. an
4. an 7. a
UNIT 66

66.2
2. a vegetable
3. a game
4. a tool
5. a mountain
6. a planet
7. a fruit
8. a river
9. a flower
10. a musical instrument

66.3
2. He's a sales clerk.
3. She's an architect.
4. He's a taxi driver.
5. He's an electrician.
6. She's a photographer.
7. She's a nurse.
8. I'm a/an . . .

66.4
2.-8.
Tom never wears a hat.
I can't ride a bicycle.
My brother is an artist.
Rebecca works in an office.
Jane wants to learn a foreign language.
Mike lives in an old house.
Tonight I'm going to a party.

UNIT 67

67.1
2. boats
3. women
4. cities
5. umbrellas
6. addresses
7. knives
8. sandwiches
9. families
10. feet
11. holidays
12. potatoes

67.2
2. teeth
3. people
4. children
5. fish
6. leaves

67.3
3. . . . with a lot of beautiful trees.
4. . . . with two men.
5. OK
6. . . . three children.
7. Most of my friends are students.
8. He put on his pajamas . . .
9. OK
10. Do you know many people . . .
11. I like your pants. Where did you get them?
12. . . . full of tourists.
13. OK
14. These scissors aren't . . .

67.4
2. are
3. don't
4. watch
5. were
6. live

67.5
2. a cup of tea
6. a piece of paper
7. a bowl of soup
8. a loaf of bread
9. a jar of honey

UNIT 68

68.1
3. a pitcher
4. water
5. toothpaste
6. a toothbrush
7. an egg
8. money
9. a wallet
10. sand
11. a bucket
12. an envelope

68.2
3. . . . a hat.
4. . . . a job?
5. OK
6. . . . an apple . . .
7. . . . a party . . .
8. . . . a wonderful thing.
9. . . . an island.
10. . . . a key.
11. OK
12. . . . a good idea.
13. . . . a car?
14. . . . a cup of coffee?
15. OK
16. . . . a coat.

68.3
2. a piece of wood
3. a glass of water
4. a bar of soap

UNIT 69

69.1
2. I bought a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers), and a pen.
3. I bought some stamps, some postcards, and some bread (or a loaf of bread).
4. I bought some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap), and a comb.

69.2
2. Would you like some coffee? (or . . . a cup of coffee?)
3. Would you like some cookies? (or . . . a cookie?)
4. Would you like some bread? (or . . . a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5. Would you like a sandwich?
6. Would you like some cake? (or . . . a piece of cake? / a slice of cake?)

UNIT 70

70.1
3. a
4. the
5. an
6. the . . . the
7. a . . . a
8. a . . . a
9. . . a student . . . a journalist
   . . an apartment near the college . . . The apartment is . . .
10. . . two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three . . . in a factory . . . doesn't have a job . . .

UNIT 72

72.1
2. the movies
3. the hospital
4. the airport
5. home
6. jail/prison

72.2
2. school
3. the station
4. home
5. bed
6. the post office

72.3
2. the movies
3. go to bed
4. go to jail/prison
5. go to the dentist
6. go to college
7. go to the hospital / are taken to the hospital

UNIT 73

73.1
Example answers:
2. I don't like dogs.
3. I hate museums.

UNIT 74

74.1
3. Sweden
4. The Amazon
5. Asia
6. The Pacific
7. The Rhine
8. Kenya
9. The United States
10. The Andes
11. Bangkok
12. The Alps
13. The Red Sea
14. Jamaica
15. The Bahamas

74.2
3. OK
4. the Philippines
5. the south of France

UNIT 71

71.1
3. . . the second floor.
4. . . the moon?
5. . . the best hotel in this town?
6. OK
7. . . the football stadium.
8. . . the end of May.
9. OK
10. . . the first time I met her.
11. OK
12. The Internet is a good place to get information.
13. OK
14. . . on the top shelf on the right.
15. . . in the country about 10 miles from the nearest town.

71.2
2. the same time
3. the same age
4. the same color
5. the same problem

71.3
2. the guitar
3. breakfast
4. television/TV

UNIT 70

70.2
2. the airport
3. a cup
4. a nice picture
5. the dictionary
6. the floor

70.3
2. . . . send me a postcard.
3. What is the name of . . .
4. . . . a very big country.
5. What is the largest . . .
6. . . . the color of the carpet.
7. . . . a headache.
8. . . . an old house near the station.
9. . . . the name of the director of the movie . . .
UNIT 75
75.1 2. that house
3. these postcards
4. those birds
5. this seat
6. These plates
75.2 2. Is that your umbrella?
3. Is this your book?
4. Are those your books?
5. Is that your bicycle/bike?
6. Are these your keys?
7. Are those your keys?
8. Is this your watch?
9. Are those your glasses?
10. Are these your gloves?
75.3 2. that's
3. This is
4. That's
5. that

UNIT 76
76.1 2. I don't need one
3. I'm going to get one
4. I don't have one
5. I just had one
6. there's one on First Avenue
76.2 2. a new one
3. a better one
4. an old one
5. a big one
6. a different one
76.3 2. Which ones?
   The green ones.
3. Which one?
   The one with a/the red door.
4. Which ones?
   The ones on the top shelf.
5. Which one?
   The black one.
6. Which one?
   The one on the wall.
7. Which one?
   The tall one with long hair.
8. Which ones?
   The yellow ones.
9. Which one?
   The one with a/the mustache and glasses.
10. Which ones?
    The ones I took at the party last week.

UNIT 77
77.1 2. some
3. any
4. any
5. any
6. some
7. any
8. some
9. some
10. any
11. some
12. some
77.2 2. some questions
3. any pictures
4. any foreign languages
5. some friends
6. some milk
7. any batteries
8. some fresh air
9. some fruit
10. any help
77.3 3. I've got some / I have some
4. I don't have any
5. I didn't buy any
6. I bought some
7. I didn't make any

UNIT 78
78.1 2. There are no stores near here.
3. Carla has no free time.
4. There is no light in this room.
5. There isn't any milk in the fridge.
6. There aren't any buses today.
7. Tom doesn't have any brothers or sisters.
78.2 2. any
3. any
4. any
5. any
6. any
7. any
8. no
9. any
10. no
11. None
12. any
13. any
14. anything
15. anything
16. anybody/anyone
17. anything
18. anybody/anyone
19. anything
20. anybody/anyone

Example answers:
2. Three.
3. Two cups.
4. None.
5. None.

UNIT 79
79.1 2. There's nobody in the office.
3. I have nothing to do.
4. There's nothing on TV.
5. There was no one at home.
6. We found nothing.
There wasn't anybody on the bus.
I don't have anything to read.
I don't have anyone to help me.
She didn't hear anything.
We don't have anything for dinner.

Nothing.
Nobody./No one.
Nobody./No one.
Nothing.
Nobody./No one.
Don't want anything.
I'm not meeting anybody/anyone.
Nobody/No one knows the answer.
I didn't buy anything.
Nothing happened.
Nobody/No one was late.

Anything
Nobody/No one
Nothing
Anything
Anybody/anyone
Nothing
Anything
Anybody/anyone
Nothing

Nowhere.
I don't want anything.
I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

Every day
Every time
Every room
Every word

All of them.
Some of them.
None of them.
Most of them.
None of it.

Some people...

Some people...

Some questions...

OK

All insects...

OK (or... all of these books)

Most of the students...

OK

Most of the night

Both

Neither

Neither

Both

Neither

Either

Neither

Either

Both windows are open.

Neither man is wearing a hat. Or Neither of them is wearing...

Both men have (got) beards. Or Both of them have...

Both buses go to the airport. Or... are going to the airport.

Neither answer is right.

Both of them are students.

Neither of them is a student.

Both of them live in Boston.

Both of them like to cook.
7. Neither of them can play the piano.
8. Both of them read the newspaper.
9. Neither of them is interested in sports.

UNIT 84

84.1
2. many 8. many
3. much 9. How many
4. many 10. How much
5. many 11. How much
6. much 12. How many
7. much

84.2
2. much time
3. many countries
4. many people
5. much luggage
6. many times

84.3
2. a lot of interesting things
3. a lot of accidents
4. a lot of fun
5. a lot of traffic

84.4
2. a lot of snow
3. OK
4. a lot of money
5. OK
6. a lot

84.5
3. She plays tennis a lot.
4. He doesn’t use his car much. (or... a lot.)
5. He doesn’t go out much. (or... a lot.)
6. She travels a lot.

UNIT 85

85.1
2. a few
3. a little
4. a few
5. a little
6. a few

85.2
2. a little milk
3. A few days
4. a little Russian

5. a few friends
6. a few times
7. a few chairs
8. a little fresh air

85.3
2. very little coffee
3. very little rain
4. very few hotels
5. very little time
6. Very few people
7. very little work

85.4
2. A few
5. few
3. a little
6. a little
4. little
7. little

85.5
2. . . . a little luck
3. . . . a few things
4. OK
5. . . . a few questions
6. . . . few people
7. OK

UNIT 86

86.1
2. I like that green jacket.
3. Do you like classical music?
4. I had a wonderful trip.
5. We went to a Japanese restaurant.

86.2
2. dark clouds
3. long vacation
4. hot water
5. fresh air
6. sharp knife
7. dangerous job

86.3
2. It looks new.
3. I feel sick.
4. You look surprised.
5. They smell nice.
6. It tastes terrible.

86.4
2. It doesn’t look new.
3. You don’t sound American.
4. I don’t feel cold.
5. They don’t look heavy.
6. Maybe, but it doesn’t taste good.

UNIT 87

87.1
2. badly 5. fast
3. quietly 6. dangerously
4. angrily

87.2
2. work hard
3. sleep well
4. win easily
5. Think carefully
6. know her very well
7. explain things clearly/well
8. Come quickly

87.3
2. angry
3. slowly
4. slow
5. careful
6. hard
7. suddenly

87.4
2. well
3. good
4. well

UNIT 88

88.1
2. bigger
3. slower
4. more expensive
5. higher
6. more dangerous

88.2
2. stronger
3. happier
4. more modern
5. more important
6. better
7. larger
8. more serious
9. prettier
10. more crowded

88.3
2. hotter/warmer
3. more expensive
4. worse
5. farther
6. more difficult or harder
UNIT 89

89.1
3. Liz is taller than Ben.
4. Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
5. Ben works harder than Liz.
6. Ben has more money than Liz.
7. Liz is a better driver than Ben.
8. Ben is more patient than Liz.
9. Ben is a better dancer than Liz.
10. Liz is more intelligent than Ben.
11. Liz speaks Spanish better than Ben. / Liz speaks better Spanish than Ben. / Liz's Spanish is better than Ben's.
12. Ben goes to the movies more than Liz. / ... more often than Liz.

89.2
2. You're older than her. / ... than she is.
3. You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
4. You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
5. You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. / You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
6. You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
7. You have more money than them. / ... than they do.
8. You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
9. You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
10. You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
11. You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

89.3
2. Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
3. My camera cost a little more than yours. / ... than your camera. / My camera was a little more expensive than ... 
4. I feel much better today than yesterday. / ... than I did yesterday. / ... than I felt yesterday.
5. It's a little warmer today than yesterday. / ... than it was yesterday.
6. Sarah is a much better volleyball player than me / ... than I am. / Sarah is much better at volleyball than me / ... than I am. / Or Sarah plays volleyball much better than me / ... than I do.

UNIT 90

90.1
2. A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
3. D is younger than C.
4. D is more expensive than A.
5. A is better than C.
6. A is the best.

90.2
2. Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.
3. I didn't get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
4. They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.
5. You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
6. He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

UNIT 91

91.1
2. C is longer than A.
3. D is the longest.
4. B is the shortest.
5. D is younger than C.
6. C is the oldest.
7. B is the youngest.

91.3
2. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
3. - 6.

UNIT 92

92.1
2. enough chairs
3. enough paint
4. enough wind

92.2
2. The car isn't big enough.
3. His legs aren't long enough.
4. He isn't strong enough.
92.3
3. old enough
4. enough time
5. big enough
6. eat enough
7. enough space
8. tired enough
9. practice enough

92.4
2. sharp enough to cut
3. warm enough to go
4. enough bread to make
5. well enough to win
6. enough time to read

UNIT 93
93.1
2. too heavy
3. too low
4. too fast
5. too big
6. too crowded

93.2
3. enough
4. too many
5. too
6. enough
7. too much
8. enough
9. too
10. too many
11. too much

93.3
3. It's too far.
4. It's too expensive.
5. It isn't/It's not big enough.
6. It was too difficult.
7. It isn't/It's not good enough.
8. I'm too busy.
9. It was too long.

93.4
2. It's too early to go to bed.
3. They're too young to get married.
4. It's too dangerous to go out at night.
5. It's too late to call Sue (now).
6. I was too surprised to say anything.

UNIT 94
94.1
3. I like this picture very much.
4. Tom started his new job last week.
5. OK
6. Jane bought a present for her friend. or Jane bought her friend a present.
7. I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8. OK
9. I borrowed 50 dollars from my brother.

94.2
2. I bought a new computer last week.
3. Paul finished his work quickly.
4. Emily doesn't speak French very well.
5. I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6. Do you know New York well?
7. We enjoyed the party very much.
8. I explained the problem carefully.
9. We met some friends at the airport.
10. Did you buy that jacket in Canada?
11. We do the same thing every day.
12. I don't like football very much.

UNIT 95
95.1
2. He always gets up early.
3. He's/He is never late for work.
4. He sometimes gets angry.
5. He rarely goes swimming.
6. He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

95.2
2. Susan is always polite.
3. I usually finish work at 5:00.
4. Sarah has just started a new job.
5. I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6. The bus isn't usually late.
7. I don't often eat fish.
8. I will never forget what you said.
9. Have you ever lost your passport?
10. Do you still work in the same place?
11. They always stay at the same hotel.
12. Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
13. Is Tina already here?
14. What do you usually have for breakfast?
15. I can never remember his name.

95.3
2. Yes, and I also speak French.
3. Yes, and I'm also hungry.
4. Yes, and I've also been to Guatemala.
5. Yes, and I also bought some books.

95.4
1. They both play soccer.
They're / They are both students.
They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
2. They're / They are all married.
They were all born in Venezuela.
They all live in Miami.

ANSWER KEY TO EXERCISES 297
UNIT 96

96.1
2. Do you still have an old car?
3. Are you still a student?
4. Are you still studying Japanese?
5. Do you still go to the movies a lot?
6. Do you still want to be a teacher?

96.2
2. He was looking for a job.
   He’s/He is still looking (for a job).
   He hasn’t found a job yet.
3. She was asleep.
   She’s / She is still asleep.
   She hasn’t woken up yet. / She isn’t awake yet. or
   She hasn’t gotten up yet. / She isn’t up yet.
4. They were having dinner. / They were eating (dinner).
   They’re / They are still having dinner. / . . . still eating (dinner).
   They haven’t finished (dinner) yet. / They haven’t finished eating (dinner) yet.

96.3
2. Is Helen here yet? or Has Helen arrived/come yet?
3. Have you gotten the results of your blood test yet? / Have you received the . . . / Do you have the . . .
4. Have you decided where to go (for vacation) yet? / Do you know where you’re going (for vacation) yet?

96.4
3. She’s/She has already gone/ left.
4. I already have one. / I’ve already got one.
5. I’ve/I have already paid it. or I already paid it.
6. No, he already knows.

UNIT 97

97.1
2. He gave it to Gary.
3. He gave them to Sarah.
4. He gave it to his sister.
5. He gave them to Robert.
6. He gave it to a neighbor.

97.2
2. I gave Joanna a plant.
3. I gave Richard a tie.
4. I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
5. I gave Rachel some flowers / a bouquet of flowers.
6. I gave Kevin a pen.

97.3
2. Can you lend me an umbrella?
3. Can you give me your address?
4. Can you lend me 20 dollars?
5. Can you send me some information?
6. Can you show me the letter?
7. Can you get me some stamps?

97.4
2. lend you some money
3. send the letter to me
4. buy you a present
5. pass me the sugar
6. give it to her
7. showed the police officer my driver’s license

UNIT 98

98.1
3–7.
I went to the window and (I) looked out.
I wanted to call you, but I didn’t have your number.
I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
Do you want me to come with you, or should I wait here?

98.2
Example answers:
2. because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
3. but it was closed.
4. so he didn’t eat anything. / so he didn’t want anything to eat.
5. because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.

98.3
Example answers:
3. I went to the movies, but the movie wasn’t very good.
4. I went to a coffee shop and met some friends of mine.
5. There was a movie on television, so I watched it.
6. I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn’t sleep.

UNIT 99

99.1
2. When I’m tired, I like to watch TV.
3. When I called her, there was no answer.
4. When I go on vacation, I always go to the same place.
5. When the program ended, I turned off the TV.
6. When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

99.2
2. when they heard the news.
3. they went to live in France.
4. while they were away.
5. before they came here
6. somebody broke into the house
7. they didn’t believe me.

99.3
2. I finish
3. it’s
4. I’ll be . . . she leaves
5. stops
6. We’ll come . . . we’re
7. I come . . . I’ll bring
8. I’m
9. I’ll give . . . I go
10. I’ll tell . . . I’m

99.4
Example answers:
2. you finish your work
3. I’m going to buy a motorcycle
4. you get ready
5. I won’t have much free time
6. I come back

UNIT 100

100.1
2. If you pass the driving test, you’ll get your license.
3. If you fail the driving test, you can take it again.
4. If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
5. If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6. If you're busy now, we can talk later.
7. If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
8. If you need money, I can lend you some.

100.2
2. I give
3. is
4. I'll call
5. I'll be . . . get
6. Will you go . . . they invite

100.3
Example answers:
3. ... you're busy.
4. . .. you'll feel better in the morning.
5. ... you're not watching it.
6. ... she doesn't practice.
7. ... I'll go and see Chris.
8. ... the weather is good.
9. ... it rains today.

100.4
2. When
3. If
4. If
5. if
6. When
7. if
8. when . . . if

UNIT 101

101.1
3. wanted
4. had
5. were/was
6. didn't enjoy
7. could
8. tried
9. didn't have

101.2
3. I'd go / I would go
4. she knew
5. we had
6. you won
7. I wouldn't stay
8. we lived
9. It would be
10. the salary was/were

11. I wouldn't know
12. would you change

101.3
2. I'd watch it / I would watch it
3. we had some pictures on the wall
4. the air would be cleaner
5. every day was/were the same
6. I'd be bored / I would be bored
7. we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8. we would/could buy a bigger house

101.4
Example answers:
2. I'd go to Antarctica
3. I didn't have any friends
4. I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
5. I'd try and help
6. there were no guns

UNIT 102

102.1
2. A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3. A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4. A patient is a person who is sick in the hospital.
5. A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6. A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7. A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8. A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

102.2
2. The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3. Most of the students who took the test passed (it).
4. The police officer who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

102.3
2. who 6. which
3. which 7. who
4. which 8. who
5. who 9. which
That is also correct in all these sentences.

UNIT 103

103.1
2. I've lost the pen you gave me.
3. I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4. Where are the flowers I gave you?
5. I didn't believe the story he told us.
6. How much were the oranges you bought?

103.2
2. The meal you cooked was excellent.
3. The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
4. The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

103.3
2. Who are the people you were talking to?
3. Did you find the keys you were looking for?
4. Where is the party you're going to?
5. What's the name of the movie you were talking about?
6. What's that music you're listening to?
7. Did you get the e-mail you were waiting for?

103.4
2. What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
3. How big is the town where you live?
4. Where exactly is the factory where you work?

ANSWER KEY TO EXERCISES 299
UNIT 104

104.1
2. at 7. at
3. in 8. in
4. at 9. at
5. in 10. in... at
6. in

104.2
3. at 11. at
4. on 12. in
5. in 13. on
6. in 14. on
7. on 15. at
8. on 16. at
9. at 17. on
10. on 18. in

104.3
4. A 9. both
5. both 10. both
7. B 12. both

104.4
2. I'll call you in three days.
3. My exam is in two weeks. /
   ... in 14 days.
4. Tom will be here in half an
   hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

104.5
3. in
4. – (already complete)
5. – (already complete)
6. in
7. on
8. – (already complete)
9. – (already complete)
10. – (already complete)
11. in
12. at

UNIT 105

105.1
2. Alex lived in Canada until 2003.
3. Alex has lived in Japan since 2003.
5. Jin Sook has lived in Australia since 2007.
7. Beth has worked in a restaurant since 2005.
8. Adam was a teacher from 1996 to 2002.
9. Adam has been a journalist since 2002.
10. Alex has lived in Japan for ___ years.
12. Jin Sook has lived in Australia for ___ years.
13. Beth worked in a hotel for three years.
14. Beth has worked in a restaurant for ___ years.
15. Adam was a teacher for six years.
16. Adam has been a journalist for ___ years.

105.2
2. until 9. since
3. for 10. until
4. since 11. for
5. Until 12. until
6. for 13. Since
7. for 14. for
8. until

UNIT 106

106.1
2. after lunch
3. before the end
4. during the course
5. before they went to Mexico
6. during the night
7. while you’re waiting
8. after the concert

106.2
3. while
4. for
5. while
6. during
7. while
8. for
9. during
10. while

UNIT 107

107.1
2. In the box.
3. On the box.
4. On the wall.
5. At the bus stop.
6. In the field.
7. On the balcony.
8. In the pool.
9. At the window.
10. On the ceiling.
12. At the table.

107.2
3. while
4. for
5. while
6. during
7. while
8. for
9. during
10. at
11. in
12. at
13. on
14. at
15. on the wall in the living room

UNIT 108

108.1
3. In bed.
4. On a ship.
5. In the sky.
6. At a party.
7. At the doctor's.
8. On the second floor.
9. At work.
10. On a plane.
11. In a plane.
12. At a wedding.
**UNIT 109**

109.1
2. to 6. to
3. in 7. to
4. to 8. in
5. in

109.2
3. to
4. to
5. (at) home ... to work
6. at
7. - (already complete)
8. to
9. at
10. at a restaurant ... to the hotel

109.3
2. to
3. to
4. in
5. to
6. to
7. at
8. to
9. to
10. at
11. at
12. to Maria's house ... (at) home
13. - (already complete)
14. meet at the party ... go to the party

109.4
1. to
2. - (already complete)
3. at
4. in
5. to
6. - (already complete)

109.5

*Example answers:*
2. to work
3. at work
4. to Alaska
5. to parties
6. at a friend's house

**UNIT 110**

110.1
2. next to / by
3. in front of
4. between
5. next to / by
6. in front of
7. behind
8. on the
9. in the

110.2
2. behind
3. above
4. in front of
5. on
6. by / next to
7. below / under
8. above
9. under
10. by / next to
11. across from
12. on

110.3
2. The fountain is in front of the theater.
3. The bank/bookstore is across from the theater. or Paul's office is across from the theater. or The theater is across from . . .
4. The bank/supermarket is next to the bookstore. or The bookstore is next to the . . .
5. Paul's office is above the bookstore.
6. The bookstore is between the bank and the supermarket.

**UNIT 111**

111.1
2. Go under the bridge.
3. Go up the hill.
4. Go down the steps.
5. Go along this street.
6. Go into the hotel.
7. Go past the hotel.
8. Go out of the hotel.
9. Go over the bridge.
10. Go through the park.

**UNIT 112**

112.1
2. on time
3. on vacation
4. on the phone
5. on television

112.2
2. by
3. with
4. about
5. on
6. by
7. at
8. on
9. with
10. about grammar by Vera P. Bull

112.3
2. off
3. over
4. out of
5. across
6. around
7. through
8. on
9. around
10. into the house through a window

**UNIT 113**

113.1
2. in
3. to
UNIT 113

2. interested in going
3. good at getting
4. fed up with waiting
5. sorry for/about waking
6. Thank you for waiting.

UNIT 114

114.1
2. to
3. for
4. to
5. at
6. for

114.2
2. to
3. of
4. to
5. for
6. for

UNIT 115

115.1
2. went in
3. looked up
4. rode off/away
5. turned around
6. got off
7. sat down
8. got out

115.2
2. away
3. around
4. going out ... be back
5. down
6. over
7. back
8. in
9. up
10. going away ... coming back

UNIT 116

116.1
2. She took off her hat. or She took her hat off.
3. He put down his bag. or He put his bag down.
4. She picked up the magazine. or She picked the magazine up.
5. He put on his sunglasses. or He put his sunglasses on.
6. She turned off the faucet. or She turned the faucet off.

116.2
2. He put his jacket on. He put it on.
3. She took off her glasses. She took them off.
4. I picked the phone up. I picked it up.
5. They gave the key back. They gave it back.
6. We turned off the lights. We turned them off.

116.3
2. take it back
3. picked them up
4. turned it off
5. bring them back

116.4
3. knocked over
4. look it up
5. throw them away
6. tried on
7. showed me around
8. gave up
9. fill it out
10. put your cigarette out
1. Kate is a doctor.
2. The children are asleep.
3. Gary isn't hungry.
4. The books aren't on the table.
5. The hotel is near the station.
6. The bus isn't full.

2. she's / she is
3. Where are
4. Is he
5. It's / It is
6. I'm / I am or No, I'm not.
7. I'm a student.
8. What color is
9. It
10. Are you
11. How much are they?

3. He's / He is taking a shower.
4. Are the children playing?
5. Is it raining?
6. They're / They are coming now.
7. Why are you standing here? I'm / I am waiting for somebody.

4. Sam doesn't want
5. Do you want
6. Does Helen live
7. Sarah knows
8. I don't travel
9. do you usually get up
10. They don't go out
11. Tom always leaves
12. does Julia do . . . She works

5. She's / She is a student.
6. She doesn't have a car.
7. She goes out a lot.
8. She has / She's got a lot of friends.
9. She doesn't like Houston.
10. She likes to dance.
11. She isn't / She's not interested in sports.

6. Are you married?
1. Where do you live?
2. Do you have any children?
3. How old is she?

2. How old are you?
3. What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?
4. Do you like / enjoy your job?
5. Do you have a car?
6. Do you (usually) go to work by car?

3. What's his name?
4. What does he do? / What's his job?
5. Does he live / work in New York?

7. Sonia is 32 years old.
8. I have / I've got two sisters.
9. We often watch TV at night.
11. My car has a flat tire. or My car's got / has got a flat tire.
12. These flowers are beautiful.
13. Mary speaks German very well.

8. are you cooking
9. plays
10. I'm leaving
11. It's raining
12. I don't watch
13. we're looking
14. do you pronounce

9. we go
10. shining
11. are you going
12. do you take
13. She writes
14. I never read
15. They're watching
16. She's talking
17. do you usually have
18. He's visiting
19. I don't drink

10. went
11. found
12. was
13. had / took
14. told
15. gave
16. were
17. thought
18. invited / asked

12. How long were you there? /
13. How long did you stay there?
14. Did you like / enjoy the Bahamas?
15. Where did you stay?
16. Was the weather good?
17. When did you get / come back?

13. I forgot
14. did you get
15. I didn't speak
16. Did you have
17. he didn't go
18. she arrived
19. did Robert live
20. The meal didn't cost

14. were working
15. opened
16. rang . . . was cooking
17. heard . . . looked
18. was looking . . . happened
19. wasn't reading . . . was watching
20. didn't read
21. finished . . . paid . . . left
22. saw . . . was walking . . . was waiting
15  
3. is playing  
4. gave  
5. doesn’t like  
6. did your parents go  
7. saw... was driving  
8. Do you watch  
9. were you doing  
10. ‘m/am trying  
11. ‘m/am trying  
12. didn’t sleep  

16  
2. I haven’t read it.  
3. Have you seen her?  
4. I’ve/I have had enough.  
5. Have you (ever) been to Chile?  
6. How long have you lived here? or ... have you been living here?  
7. we’ve/ we have known each other for years.  
8. It’s/ It has been raining all day. or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.  

17  
3. ‘s/has been  
4. for  
5. since  
6. has he lived / has he been  
7. for  
8. ‘ve/have been  

18  
Example answers:  
3. I’ve just started this exercise.  
4. I’ve met Julia a few times.  
5. I haven’t had dinner yet.  
6. I’ve never been to Australia.  
7. I’ve lived here since I was born.  
8. I’ve lived here for three years.  

19  
3. bought/got  
4. went  
5. ‘ve/have seen or saw it...  
6. haven’t started (it)  
7. was  
8. didn’t see  
9. finished or graduated from  
10. ‘s/has been  

20  
3. He’s/He has lived there since last May. or He’s been living...  
4. she left at 4:00.  
5. How many times have you been there?  
6. I’ve / have been tired all day.  
7. It was on the table last night.  
8. I’ve eaten there a few times.  
9. What time did they get here?  

21  
1. When was the last time? or When did you go the last time? or When were you there the last time?  
2. How long have you lived there? I bought/got it yesterday.  
3. How long have you lived there / have you been there / have you been living there? Before that we lived on Mill Road.  
4. How long have you worked there / have you been working there? What did you do before that? I was a taxi driver. or I worked as a taxi driver.  

22  
Example answers:  
2. I didn’t go out last night.  
3. I was at work yesterday afternoon.  
4. I went to a party a few days ago.  
5. It was my birthday last week.  
6. I went to South America last year.  

23  
2. B 9. C  
3. D 10. D  
4. A 11. A  
5. A 12. C  
7. C 14. C  
8. B 15. A  
11. was  
12. ‘ve/have never made  

24  
1. was damaged... be torn down  
2. was built... is used... is being painted  
3. is called... be called... was changed  
4. have been made... are produced  

25  
2. is visited  
3. were damaged  
4. be built  
5. is being cleaned  
6. be forgotten  
7. has been repaired  
8. be kept  
9. Have you ever been bitten  
10. was stolen  

26  
2. My car was stolen last week.  
3. You’re / You are wanted on the phone.  
4. All the bananas have been eaten.  
5. The machine will be repaired.  
6. We’re / We are being watched.  
7. The housework has to be done.  

27  
3. pushed  
4. was pushed  
5. has taken or took  
6. is being repaired  
7. invented  
8. was the camera invented  
9. have been washed or were washed  
10. I’ve / I have washed them. or I washed them.  
11. did they send  
12. be sent  

28  
2. B 8. B  
4. C 10. A  
6. C 12. C  
7. C  

304 ANSWER KEY TO ADDITIONAL EXERCISES
29
1. B: I stayed
   A: did you do
   B: I watched
   A: are you going to see
   B: I don't know. I haven't decided
2. A: have you been
   B: We arrived
   A: are you staying / are you going to stay
   A: do you like
   B: we're having
3. A: I've just remembered / I just remembered - Karen called
   B: She always calls or She's always calling . . . Did she leave
   A: she wants
   B: I'll call . . . Do you know
   A: I'll get
4. A: I'm going . . . Do you want
   B: are you going
   A: Have you ever eaten
   B: I've been . . . I went
5. A: I've lost / I lost . . . Have you seen
   B: You were wearing . . . I came
   A: I'm not wearing
   B: Have you looked / Did you look
   A: I'll go

30
1. we met
2. we sat / we were sitting
3. We didn't know
4. we became
5. we liked
6. we spent
7. We finished
8. we meet
9. has been
10. she's working
11. She's coming
12. she comes
13. we'll have / we're going to have
14. It will be

31
1. B: I stayed
   A: did you do
   B: I watched
   A: are you going to see
   B: I don't know. I haven't decided
2. A: have you been
   B: We arrived
   A: are you staying / are you going to stay
   A: do you like
   B: we're having
3. A: I've just remembered / I just remembered - Karen called
   B: She always calls or She's always calling . . . Did she leave
   A: she wants
   B: I'll call . . . Do you know
   A: I'll get
4. A: I'm going . . . Do you want
   B: are you going
   A: Have you ever eaten
   B: I've been . . . I went
5. A: I've lost / I lost . . . Have you seen
   B: You were wearing . . . I came
   A: I'm not wearing
   B: Have you looked / Did you look
   A: I'll go

32
3. B 12. A
6. C 15. C
7. B 16. A
8. A 17. C
10. A

33
2. a car
3. the fridge
4. a teacher
5. school
6. the movies
7. a taxi
8. the piano
9. computers
10. the same

34
4. a horse
5. The sky
6. a tourist
7. for lunch (-)
8. the first president of the United States
9. a watch
10. remember names (-)
11. the next train
12. sends e-mails (-)
13. the backyard
14. the Majestic Hotel
15. sick last week (-) . . . to work (-)
16. the highest mountain in the world
17. to the radio . . . having breakfast (-)
18. like sports (-) . . . is basketball (-)
19. a doctor . . . an art teacher
20. the second floor . . . the top of the stairs . . . on the right
21. After dinner (-) . . . watched TV (-)
22. northern Mexico (-) . . . the south

35
2. in 11. for
3. on 12. at
4. at 13. in
5. on 14. at
6. in 15. on
7. since 16. by
8. on 17. for . . . on
9. by 18. to . . . in
10. in 19. at . . . in
## Answer Key to Study Guide

### Present
- 1.1 B
- 1.2 A
- 1.3 C
- 1.4 A
- 1.5 C, D
- 1.6 B
- 1.7 D
- 1.8 C
- 1.9 C
- 1.10 A
- 1.11 C
- 1.12 A
- 1.13 D
- 1.14 C
- 1.15 A
- 1.16 D
- 1.17 C, D
- 1.18 A, D

### Verb forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Option 1</th>
<th>Option 2</th>
<th>Option 3</th>
<th>Option 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Option 1</th>
<th>Option 2</th>
<th>Option 3</th>
<th>Option 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>A, B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>B, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Reported speech
- 11.1 E
- 11.2 A, B, D

### -ing and to...
- 12.1 B
- 12.2 D
- 12.3 B
- 12.4 C
- 12.5 B, C
- 12.6 C
- 12.7 A
- 12.8 D

### Go, get, do, make, and have
- 13.1 A, D
- 13.2 C
- 13.3 C, D
- 13.4 A, D
- 13.5 B
- 13.6 D

### Pronouns and possessives
- 14.1 A
- 14.2 C
- 14.3 D
- 14.4 B
- 14.5 B, C
- 14.6 A
- 14.7 E
- 14.8 A
- 14.9 D
- 14.10 C

### A and the
- 15.1 C
- 15.2 B
- 15.3 A, C
- 15.4 B
- 15.5 B
- 15.6 A
- 15.7 D
- 15.8 C
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determiners and pronouns</th>
<th>15.9 B</th>
<th>15.10 B</th>
<th>15.11 E</th>
<th>15.12 D</th>
<th>15.13 B</th>
<th>15.14 A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.10 B</td>
<td>15.11 E</td>
<td>15.12 D</td>
<td>15.13 B</td>
<td>15.14 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.11 E</td>
<td>15.12 D</td>
<td>15.13 B</td>
<td>15.14 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.12 D</td>
<td>15.13 B</td>
<td>15.14 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Word order**

|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|--------|--------|

**Conjunctions and clauses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>17.1 A</th>
<th>17.2 C</th>
<th>17.3 C</th>
<th>17.4 D</th>
<th>17.5 B</th>
<th>17.6 B</th>
<th>17.7 A, C</th>
<th>17.8 E</th>
<th>17.9 A</th>
<th>17.10 B</th>
<th>17.11 D</th>
<th>17.12 A</th>
<th>17.13 D</th>
<th>17.14 C</th>
<th>17.15 A</th>
<th>17.16 E</th>
<th>17.17 C</th>
<th>17.18 B</th>
<th>17.19 D</th>
<th>17.20 A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17.18 B</td>
<td>17.19 D</td>
<td>17.20 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.17 C</td>
<td>17.18 B</td>
<td>17.19 D</td>
<td>17.20 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Phrasal verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18.14 D</td>
<td>18.15 A</td>
<td>18.16 E</td>
<td>18.17 C</td>
<td>18.18 B</td>
<td>18.19 D</td>
<td>18.20 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.13 C</td>
<td>18.14 D</td>
<td>18.15 A</td>
<td>18.16 E</td>
<td>18.17 C</td>
<td>18.18 B</td>
<td>18.19 D</td>
<td>18.20 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adjectives and adverbs**

|---------|--------|--------|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------|---------|--------|-----------|--------|---------|

**Determiners and pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>21.1 C</th>
<th>21.2 A, B</th>
<th>21.3 B</th>
<th>21.4 B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21.3 B</td>
<td>21.4 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 66
a and some 68-69
a/an and the 70
about 112E
above 110E
across 111
across from 110B
active and passive Appendix 1
adjectives 86
get + adjective (get tired, etc.) 57B
possessive adjectives (my/your/her, etc.) 61, 63
something/anybody, etc. + adjective 80C
adjectives and adverbs (quick/quickly) 87
comparatives (older / more expensive) 88-90
superlatives (the oldest / the most expensive) 91
adjectives + preposition (afraid of, etc.) 113A
adverbs 87
word order (always/usually/often, etc.) 95
advise (advise somebody to . . .) 54B
afraid (of) 113A
after 99, 106
ago 18B
all
all and every, etc. 81
all (of) 82
word order 95
along 111
already 96C
already + present perfect or simple past 20B
word order 95
also (word order) 95
always
always + simple present 5C
word order 95
am/is/are 1-2
am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3-4, 24A, 26, 52C
there is / there are 38
an see a
and 98
angry (at/with/about) 113A
another 66B
any
any and some 77
not + any 78
any and no 78
any (of) 82
anybody/everybody/everything
77D, 79-80
anywhere 80
apostrophe (I'm, it's, etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe's (my brother's car) 65
are see am/is/are
around 111
turn around / show around (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 7
arrive 109C
articles (a/an/the) 66-74
a/an 66, 68-69
a/an and the 70
the 71-74
as (not as . . . as) 90
ask
ask somebody to . . . 54B
ask somebody for . . . 114A
at
at 8:00 / at night, etc. 104
at the bus stop / at work, etc. 107-108
at and to 109
at the age of . . . 112B
auxiliary verbs 24, 41-43
away
run away / throw away, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 7
back
come back / give back, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 7

base form 52
be (base form of am/is/are)
am/is/are 1-2
am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3-4, 24A, 26, 52C
was/were 10
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 24A, 52C
have/has been (present perfect) 16-17
passive 22-23, Appendix 1
will be 28
because 98
been
have/has been (present perfect) 16-17
been and gone 21A
there has/ have been 39B
before 99, 106
begin (begin to . . . or begin -ing) 53C
belong (to) 114A
below 110E
best 91B
better 88D
between 110A
born 22C
both 83
word order 95
but 98
by 112C
by after the passive
(I was bitten by a dog.) 22D
by myself / by yourself, etc. 64C
by (= next to) 110C
call 114B
can/can't 31
comparative (older / more expensive, etc.) 88-90
conditional (if...)
if I do . . . 100
if I did . . . 101
conjunctions 98-101
and / but / or / so / because 98
when / before / while / after / until 99
if 100-101
continue (continue to . . . or continue -ing) 53C
corrections (short forms - I'm, it's,
you've, etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 31C-D
countable and uncountable nouns 68-69
depend (on) 114C
did
didn't in negatives 12, 24D, 41C, 44B, 52A
did in questions 12, 24D, 41C, 45B, 52A
different (from) 113A
direct speech and reported speech 51
do and make 58
don't does in negatives 6, 24D, 41C, 44B, 52A
do/does in questions 7, 24D, 41C, 45B, 52A
don't go / don't fall, etc. (imperative) 34B
down 111
sit down / put down, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 6-7
during 106
each other 64D
either either and too 43A
either (of) 83
embedded questions (Do you know what...?, etc.) 50
e-mail 114B
end (at the end of) 104B, 107B
enjoy enjoy -ing 53B
enjoy myself/yourself, etc. 64A
enjoy -ing 53B-C
got past of get 11C, 57
got have/has got 9, 59A
don't have/haven't got 9B
had past of have 11C
had to 34B
He said he had (done something) 51, Appendix 1.1
happen (to) 114A
hate 53C-D
have 9, 59
don't have/haven't got 9B
have and short answers 9D
have got / has got 9, 59A
have done / have been, etc. (present perfect) 16–19, 24C
have to 34
have a nice time / have fun, etc. 34A
there has/has been 39B
have breakfast / have a good time, etc. 59B
her 60–61, 63
hers 62–63
herself 64
him 60, 63
himself 64
his 61–63
home 56A, 72A, 109B
get home 57C, 109C
how 48
How long have you...? (present perfect) 17
How big? / How old? / How far?, etc. 48D
How long does it take? 49
How much? / How many? 84A
I / you / he, she, etc. (personal pronouns) 60, 63
if 100–101
if we go / if you see, etc. 100
if and when 100C
if I had / if we went 101
Do you know if...? 50C
imperative (do this / don't do that, etc.) 34
in in five minutes / in three years, etc. 104B
in April / in the summer, etc. 104
in a room / in the hospital, etc. 107–108
in and to 109
in back of 110A
in front of 110A-B
in to 111
in / fill in, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115–116, Appendix 6
infinitive adjective + infinitive (it's easy to...) 40B
infinitive (do/see, etc.) 52
infinitive and -ing (do/doing, etc.) 52–53
I want to go, etc. 52B, 53
I went to the store to buy... 55
infinitive and for... 55B
something to eat / nowhere to go, etc. 80D
-ing (doing/playing/going, etc.) am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 24A, 26, 52C
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 24A, 52C
-ing and infinitive (do/doing, etc.) 52–53
verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing, etc.) 53B-C
go -ing (go swimming, etc.) 56D
prepositions + -ing 106D, 113B
interested (in) 113A
into 111
irregular verbs 11C, 25B,
Appendix 2–3
is see am/is/are 3, 4, 24A, 26, 52C
it 40, 60B
it is and there is 38B, 40A
it's and its 61C
its 61
just just + present perfect or simple past 20A
word order 95
kind (kind to somebody / kind of somebody) 113A
know (Do you know where...?) 50

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
INDEX

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

learn (learn to . . .) 53A
left (on the left) 110A
lend (lend something to somebody) 97
less 89C
let 54D
let’s (let’s go / let’s dance, etc.) 37C, 54D
like (What is it like?) 47B
like (verb) would like 35, 53D, 54A
do you like? 35C
would and would you like? 35C
like to . . . or like -ing 53C
listen (to) 114A
little / a little 85
(a little older/bigger, etc.) 89D
look look + adjective (look tired, etc.) 86C
look at/for/after 114A
lot (a lot of . . .) 84
love 53C-D

make 58
make somebody do something 54D
make do 58
many many and much 84
not as many (as) 90B
too many 93C
married married to 113A
get married 57B
may 30D
me/you/him, etc. (personal pronouns) 60, 63
middle (in the middle of) 108A, 110A
might 30
mind (I don’t mind -ing) 53B
mine/yours/hers, etc. (possessive pronouns) 62-63
modal verbs (will/can/might, etc.) 28-35, 52A
more 88C, 89
most most (of) 82
the most expensive / the most difficult, etc. 91
much much and many 84
much bigger / much more expensive 89D
not as much (as) 90B
too much 93C
must 32
my/your/his, etc. (possessive adjectives) 61, 63
myself/yourself, etc. (reflexive pronouns) 64
need need to . . . 53A
negatives 44
negative questions 45C
no and none 78
not + any 78-79
neither
Neither am I / Neither do I, etc. 43B
neither (of) 83
never never + simple present 5C
never + present perfect 16
word order 95
next to 110A
two (nice to somebody / nice of somebody) 113A
no (no money / no friends, etc.) 78A-B, 82A
nobody/no one/nothing 79-80
no one and none 78C
none 78B-C, 82B-C
nouns (countable and uncountable) 68-69
nowhere 80
of the roof of the building, etc. 65C
the . . . of . . . 74E
off 111
get off / turn off, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 6
offer (to do something) 53A
often often + simple present 5C
word order 95
on on Monday / on April 25, etc. 104
on the table / on the wall 107-108
on the left/right 110A
on vacation / on television, etc. 112A
go on (vacation / a trip, etc.) 56B
give on / put on, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 6-7
one/ones 76
or 98B
ought to 33F
our 61, 63
ours 62-63
ourselves 64
out out of 111
go out / put out, etc. (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 6-7
over 111
climb over / knock over (phrasal verbs) 115-116, Appendix 6-7
pair (a pair of . . .) 67B
passive 22-23, 24B, Appendix 1
simple present (is done) and simple past (was done) 22
present continuous (is being done) and present perfect (has been done) 23
will/can/must (etc.) be done
Appendix 1.2
past (Go past the movie theater . . .) 111
past continuous (was/were + -ing) 13-14, 24A, 52C
current continuous (I was going) and simple past (I did) 14
current continuous passive,
Appendix 1.1
past participle (cleaned/done/seen, etc.) 25A
passive perfect (I / we played) 16, 19, 24C
past continuous (the room was cleaned)
22-23, 24B, Appendix 1
regular (cleaned) and irregular (seen)
25B, Appendix 2-3
past perfect
He said he had (done something) 51
active and passive Appendix 1.1
past simple see simple past
people 67C-D
personal pronouns (I/me/you, etc.) 60, 63
persuade (persuade somebody to . . .) 54B
phrasal verbs (get up / put on, etc.) 115-116, Appendix 6-7
plural (cup cups / man men, etc.) 67
police (plural) 67D
possessive adjectives (my/your/his, etc.) 61, 63
possessive pronouns (mine/yours/his, etc.) 62-63
prefer 36B, 53C-D
prepositions 104-114
at/on/in (time) 104
for/since 18, 105
until 105A-B
before/after/during/while 106
in/at/on (places) 107-108
to/in/at (places) 109
on 104, 107-108, 110A, 112A
at 104, 107-109, 112B
under/between/next to, etc. (position) 110
up/over/through, etc. (movement) 111
by 110C, 112C
with/without 112D, 113B
about 112E
prepositions + -ing (in -ing / without -ing, etc.) 106D, 113B
adjective + prepositions (afraid of, etc.) 113A
Well known for its simple, clear explanations and two-page format, *Basic Grammar in Use* is a unique combination of grammar reference and practice for students of North American English. It is an excellent resource for use as a classroom text or for students who are studying on their own.

This new full-color edition is updated and also includes:
- a study guide to help students pinpoint exactly which grammar points they need
- more *Additional Exercises* in the back of the book to give students extra opportunities to consolidate what they have learned
- a complete answer key

A version without an answer key is also available.

**Evaluation Test** A new evaluation test helps students assess which units from *Basic Grammar in Use* to review for more practice. The test is available online in an interactive format or as a PDF. [www.cambridge.org/elt/bgiu/test](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/bgiu/test)

*Basic Grammar in Use* is available in the following formats:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>With Answers</th>
<th>With CD-ROM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>978-0-521-13353-1</td>
<td><em>Basic Grammar in Use</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>978-0-521-13334-0</td>
<td><em>Basic Grammar in Use</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>978-0-521-13337-1</td>
<td><em>Basic Grammar in Use</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Beginner to Low Intermediate**

**Also of interest**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>978-0-521-69196-3</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cambridge.org/elt/bgiu/test">Cambridge Academic Content Dictionary</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>